HANDBOOK

CITROËN C4



CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

On-line handbook

Select one of the following means of access to view your handbook on-line...

MyCITROËN

Find your handbook on the CITROËN website, under "MyCITROËN".

This personal and customisable space allows you to establish direct and special contact with the manufacturer.

Referring to the handbook on-line also gives you access to the latest information available, easily identified by the bookmark, associated with this symbol:



If the "MyCITROËN" function is not available on the CITROËN public website for your country, you can find your handbook at the following address:

http://service.citroen.com/ddb/

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of registration of your vehicle.

Scan this code for direct access to your handbook.

This handbook has been designed to help to make the most of your C4 in all circumstances and in complete safety.
Take the time to read through it so as to familiarise yourself with your vehicle.

This handbook covers all of the variations in equipment available across the whole C4 range.
Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.
Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical characteristics, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the handbook.

This document forms an integral part of your vehicle. Remember to pass it on to the new owner in the event of the sale of the vehicle.

Key

! safety warning

i additional information

contributes to the protection of the environment

CITROËN has a presence on every continent,
a complete product range,
bringing together technology and a permanent spirit of innovation,
for a modern and creative approach to mobility.
We thank you and congratulate you on your choice.

At the wheel of your new vehicle,
getting to know each system,
each control, each setting,
makes your trips, your journeys
more comfortable and more enjoyable.

Happy motoring!

Overview

Eco-driving

Instruments 1

Instrument panels 12
Rev counter 15
Warning and indicator lamps 16
Indicators 29
Time and units 37
Customising the instrument panel colours 39
Monochrome screen A 40
Monochrome screen C 42
Touch screen tablet 47
Trip computer 52

Access 2

Remote control key 56
"Keyless Entry and Starting" 62
Alarm 71
Electric windows 75
Doors 78
Boot 79

Ease of use and comfort 3

Front seats 81
Steering wheel adjustment 86
Mirrors 87
Ventilation / Heating 90
Manual air conditioning 93
Dual-zone digital air conditioning 95
Front demist - defrost 100
Rear screen demist - defrost 101
Front fittings 102
Courtesy lamps 105
Interior mood lighting 106
Panoramic sunroof 107
Centre consoles 108
Front armrest 110
Rear seats 115
Rear fittings 117
Boot fittings 118
Boot lamp 122
Luggage cover (enterprise version) 123

Lighting and visibility 4

Lighting controls 124
Automatic illumination of headlamps 129
Welcome lighting 130
Direction indicators 131
Headlamp beam height adjustment 132
Directional lighting 133
Wiper controls 135
Automatic rain sensitive wipers 136

Safety 5

Hazard warning lamps 139
Horn 139
Emergency or assistance call 139
Braking assistance systems 140
Trajectory control systems 141
Front seat belts 143
Airbags 147
Child seats 151
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 153
ISOFIX child seats 160
Child lock 165

Driving 6

Driving recommendations 166
Starting / Switching off the engine with the key 168
Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting 171
Manual parking brake 174
Electric parking brake 175
Manual gearbox 181
Automatic gearbox 182
Gear efficiency indicator 187
Stop & Start 188
Hill start assist 191
Tyre under-inflation detection 192
Lane departure warning system 194
Blind spot sensors 195
Speed limiter 198
Cruise control 201
Memorising speeds 204
Parking sensors 206

Practical information 7

Fuel 209
Misfuel prevention (Diesel) 211
Snow chains 212
Very cold climate screen 213
Towing a trailer 213
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 214
Energy economy mode 219
Audio pre-equipment 220
Changing a wiper blade 221
Fitting roof bars 222
Bonnet 223
Petrol engines 224
Diesel engines 225
Checking levels 226
Checks 230
AdBlue® additive and SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel) 232
Accessories 236

In the event of a breakdown 8

Running out of fuel (Diesel) 238
Temporary puncture repair kit 239
Spare wheel 244
Changing a bulb 251
Changing a fuse 260
12 V battery 265
Towing the vehicle 269

Technical data 9

Petrol engines 271
Petrol weights 272
Diesel engines 273
Diesel weights 275
Dimensions 278
Identification markings 279

Audio and telematics

Emergency or assistance 280
7-inch touch screen tablet 283
Audio system 353

Alphabetical index

Exterior



Keyless Entry and Starting 62-68
Remote control 56-61, 68
- opening / closing
- back-up control
- battery
Alarm 71-74

Wiper controls 135-138
Changing a wiper blade 221

Boot 57, 62, 79-80
Temporary puncture repair kit 239-243
Changing a wheel 244-250
- tools
- removing / refitting
Topping up the AdBlue additive 33-36, 232-235

Changing bulbs 257-259
- rear lamps
- 3rd brake lamp
- number plate lamp

Parking sensors 206-207
Towbar 167, 213
Quickly detachable towballl 214-218
Towing 269-270

Accessories 236-237
Roof bars 222
Panoramic sunroof 107

Door mirrors 87-88
Blind spot sensors 195-197

Lighting controls 124-131
Headlamp adjustment 132
Welcome lighting 130
Directional lighting systems 133-134
Changing bulbs 251-256
- front lamps
- front foglamps
- side repeaters

Doors 69-70, 78
Keyless Entry and Starting 62-68
- opening / closing
- emergency control
Child lock 165
Electric windows 75-77

Braking assistance 140
Trajectory control 141-142
Tyre under-inflation detection 192-193
Tyre pressures 243, 279
Snow chains 212

Fuel tank 209-210
Misfuel prevention 211

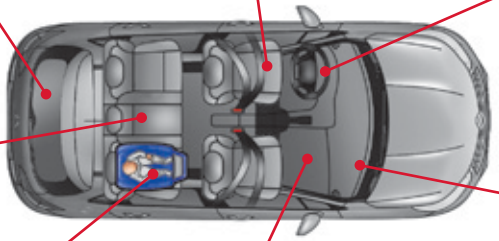
Interior

Front seats 81-85
Seat belts 143-146

Boot fittings 118-122
- rear parcel shelf
- hooks
- 12 V socket
- torch
- lashing eyes
- storage compartment

Luggage cover (C4 enterprise) 123

Airbags 147-150



Rear seats 115-116
Rear fittings 117
- 12 V socket
- rear armrest
- ski flap

Glove box 103
Deactivating the passenger's front airbag 148, 153-155

Child seats 151-159, 164
ISOFIX mountings 160-164

Front fittings 102-114
- auxiliary socket / USB port
- 12 V socket
- front armrest
- 230 V / 50 Hz socket
- mats
- storage drawers

Instruments and controls

Instrument panels 12-15
Warning lamps 16-28
Indicators 29-36
Setting buttons 36-39
- trip distance recorder
- dashboard lighting dimmer / black panel
- customisation of dials and screens

Adjusting headlamps 132

Door mirrors 87-88
Electric windows 75-77

Dashboard fuses 260-263

Opening the bonnet 223

Rear view mirror 89
Courtesy lamps 105
Interior mood lighting 106
Blind for panoramic sunroof 107

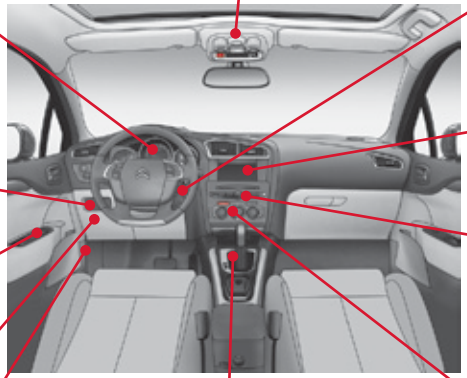
Ignition switch / Steering lock / Starting using the key 168-170
Steering lock / Starting using the START/STOP button 168, 171-173

Multifunction screens 40-51

Audio system 353-381
Setting the date / time 41, 46
Touch screen tablet 283-352
Setting the date / time 51

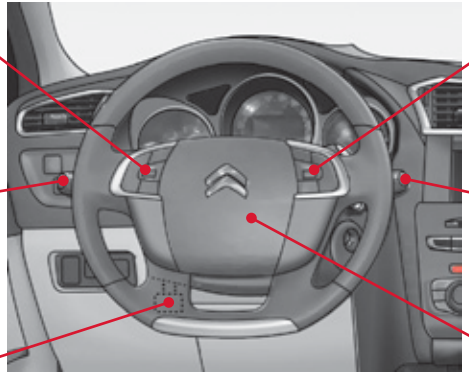
Ventilation 90-92
Manual air conditioning 93-94, 100
Digital air conditioning 95-99, 100
Demisting / Defrosting the rear screen 101

Manual gearbox 181
Automatic gearbox 182-186
Parking brake 174, 175-180



Instruments and controls

Multifunction steering wheel



Speed limiter Cruise control Memorising speeds	198-200 201-203 204-205
Lighting controls	124-131
Adjusting the steering wheel	86
Audio and telephone controls for the Audio system Audio and telephone controls for the Touch screen tablet	355 286
Wiper controls Trip computer	135-138 52-55
Horn	139

Instruments and controls

Central switch panels

Emergency call	139, 280-281
Seat belt / front passenger airbag warning lamp display	144-145, 148
Access to CITROËN services	139, 280-281





Hazard warning lamps	139
Central locking	69-70
Black panel (comfortable night driving display)	39

Side switch panels

Fuel filler flap	209-210
DSC/ASR system	141-142



Parking sensors	206-207
Stop & Start	188-190
Blind spot sensors	195-197

Lane departure warning system	194
Alarm volumetric monitoring	71-74

Technical data - Maintenance

Petrol engines 271-272
Diesel engines 273-277
Dimensions 278
Identification markings 279

Running out of Diesel fuel 238

Battery 265-268
Energy economy mode 219

Checking levels 226-229
- oil
- brake fluid
- coolant
- power steering fluid
- screenwash / headlamp wash fluid
- additive (Diesel with particle filter)

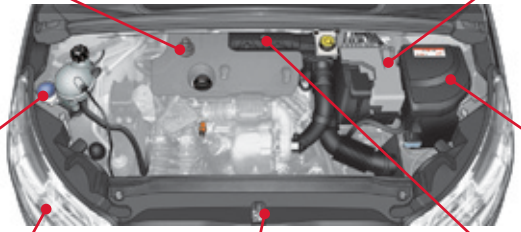
AdBlue additive 232-235

Changing / Replacing a fuse 260-261
Engine compartment fuses 264

Changing bulbs 251-259
- front
- rear

Checking components 230-231
- battery
- air filter / passenger compartment filter
- oil filter
- particle filter (Diesel)
- brake pads / discs

Bonnet 223
Petrol underbonnet 224
Diesel underbonnet 225



Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. During acceleration change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also helps reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 30 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Remember to make use of equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof and window blinds...).
Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls, if not automatic.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the level of light does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game...), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer...). Use a roof box in preference.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Don't forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter...) and observe the schedule of operations recommended in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty your vehicle becomes polluting; go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay to have the emissions of nitrous oxides brought back to the legal level.

When refuelling, do not continue after the third cut-off of the nozzle to avoid any overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1 800 miles (3 000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

Type 1 instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.
6. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
7. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
9. Time **(a)** / range (miles or km) for fuel **(b)** or the AdBlue additive and SCR system **(c)**.

Control buttons

A. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).

B. Reset service indicator or trip mileage recorder.

A and **B.** Setting the time and selecting units.

Type 2 instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
5. Engine oil level indicator.
6. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
7. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
8. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
9. Range (miles or km) for the remaining fuel (**a**) or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system (**b**).

Control buttons

A. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
B. Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

Customisable colour instrument panel



Dials and screens

1. Rev counter (x 1 000 rpm or tr/min).
2. Gear shift indicator or gear selector lever position and gear for an automatic gearbox.
3. Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter setting.
5. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
6. Engine oil level indicator.
7. Service indicator (miles or km) then, total mileage recorder. These two functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition. Lighting dimmer setting (when making an adjustment).
8. Trip mileage recorder (miles or km).
9. Fuel gauge and associated low fuel level warning lamp.
10. Range (miles or km) for the remaining fuel (**a**) or the AdBlue additive and the SCR system (**b**).

Control buttons

A. Dial COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the dials.
B. Screen COLOUR: customisation of the background colour of the screens.
C. Lighting dimmer (available in night mode).
D. Reset the service indicator or the trip mileage recorder.

Rev counter



Approaching the maximum engine speed, the bars flash to indicate to you the need to change up a gear.

When switching the ignition on or off, the speedometer needle and the bars of the rev counter and fuel gauge carry out a full sweep and then return to 0.

Warning and indicator lamps

Visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamp) or of the operation of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamp).

When the ignition is switched on

Certain warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.
When the engine is started, these warning lamps should go off.
If they remain on, before moving off, refer to the information on the warning lamp in question.

Associated warnings

The illumination, fixed or flashing, of certain warning lamps may be accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Warning lamps

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of one of the following warning lamps indicates a malfunction which requires action on the part of the driver.
The warning comes on in the instrument panel.

! If your vehicle has a screen, a warning lamp coming on is always accompanied by the display of an additional message, to assist you in identifying the problem.
If you encounter any problems, do not hesitate to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
STOP	**STOP**	fixed, alone or associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.	Illumination of this warning lamp is associated with a serious fault with the braking system, power steering, engine lubrication system or cooling system.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so as there is a risk that the engine will cut out while driving. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Maximum coolant temperature**	fixed.	The temperature of the cooling system is too high.	Stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Engine oil pressure**	fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	You must stop as soon it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Battery charge**	fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty or loose terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, ...).	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Braking**	fixed, associated with the STOP warning lamp.	The braking system fluid level has dropped significantly.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Top up with brake fluid recommended by CITROËN. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp, if the parking brake is released.	The braking system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park, switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
+ 		fixed, associated with the STOP and ABS warning lamps.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system has a fault.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Electric parking brake**	flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so. Park on flat level ground, engage a gear (or place the lever in position **P** for an automatic gearbox), switch off the ignition and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Electric parking brake fault**	fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Door(s) open**	fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, if the speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door or the boot is still open.	Close the door or boot.
		fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal if the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h).		

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Seat belt not fastened / unfastened***	fixed, then flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.	The driver or front passenger has not buckled or has unbuckled their seat belt.	Pull on the belt in question and insert the tongue in the buckle. This warning repeats the seat belt information given by the roof console warning lamps.
			At least one rear passenger has unbuckled their seat belt.	
SERVICE	**Service**	temporarily, accompanied by a message.	One or more minor faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen. You can deal with some problems yourself, such as a door open or a discharged remote control battery. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under inflation detection system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, accompanied by a message.	One or more major faults for which there is no specific warning lamp have been detected.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the screen; you must then contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed, associated with the flashing and then fixed display of the service indicator spanner.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only on BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.
	**Foot on the brake pedal**	fixed.	With an automatic gearbox, you have forgotten to press the brake pedal to come out of the **P** postion.	With the engine running, before releasing the parking brake you must press the brake pedal to unlock the the automatic gear selector lever and come out of the **P** position.

* Depending on country of sale.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Engine autodiagnosis system**	flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	Risk of destruction of the catalytic converter. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop without delay.
	**Low fuel level**	fixed, accompanied by and audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on there remains approximately **6 litres** of fuel in the tank. At this point, you begin to use the fuel reserve.	Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel. Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp will come on every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message. This audible signal and message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **"0"**. Fuel tank capacity: approximately **60 litres**. Never continue to drive until you run out of fuel, as this could damage the emission control and injection systems.
	**Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)**	fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC/ASR)**	flashing.	Regulation by the system is active.	The system optimises traction and improves the directional stability of the vehicle.
		fixed, associated with illumination of the indicator lamp in the deactivation button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The DSC/ASR or hill start assist system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Power steering**	fixed.	The power steering has a fault.	Drive carefully at reduced speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
 + SERVICE	**Under-inflation**	fixed.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. This check should preferably be carried out when the tyres are cold.
		flashing then fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.	The tyre pressure monitoring system has a fault or no sensor is detected on one of the wheels.	Under-inflation detection is not assured. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Directional headlamps**	flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Foot on the clutch****	fixed.	In the STOP mode of Stop & Start, changing to START mode is refused because the clutch pedal is not fully down.	You must declutch fully to allow the change to engine START mode.

** Only on the type 1 instrument panel.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Airbags**	temporarily.	This lamp comes on for a few seconds when you turn on the ignition, then goes off.	This lamp should go off when the engine is started. If it does not go off, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
		fixed.	One of the airbag or seat belt pretensioner systems has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Presence of water in the Diesel fuel****	fixed.	The Diesel fuel filter contains water.	Risk of damage to the injection system on Diesel engines. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
	**Particle filter (Diesel)**	fixed, accompanied by an audible signal message on the risk of blockage of the particle filter.	This indicates that the particle filter is starting to become saturated.	As soon as driving conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 35 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
		fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.	This indicates the low level of the additive reservoir.	Have the reservoir topped up as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

** Only on the type 1 instrument panel.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
UREA	**AdBlue® additive (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 350 miles (600 km) and 1500 miles (2400 km).	Have the AdBlue® additive tank topped up as soon as possible: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
UREA + SERVICE		flashing associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 0 and 350 miles (600 km).	You must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank to **avoid a breakdown**: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself.
		flashing, associated with the SERVICE warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you must **top-up the** AdBlue® additive tank: go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, or carry out this operation yourself. It is **essential** to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank.

For topping-up or for more information on the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
UREA + SERVICE + 	**SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)**	fixed, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	After confirmation of the fault with the emissions control system, you can drive for up to 650 miles (1 100 km) before the engine starting inhibition system is triggered.	Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop **without delay**, **to avoid a breakdown**.
		flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	You have exceeded the authorised driving limit following confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system: the engine starting inhibition system prevents starting of the engine.	To be able to start the engine, you **must** call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has come into operation.
It may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Left-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed down.	
	**Right-hand direction indicator**	flashing with buzzer.	The lighting stalk is pushed up.	
	**Hazard warning lamps**	flashing with audible signal.	The hazard warning lamps switch, located on the dashboard, has been operated.	The left-hand and right-hand direction indicators and their associated indicator lamps flash simultaneously.
	**Sidelamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Sidelamps" position.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is in the "Dipped beam headlamps" position or in the "AUTO" position in conditions of low light.	
	**Main beam headlamps**	fixed.	The lighting stalk is pulled towards you.	Pull the stalk again to return to dipped beam headlamps.
	**Front foglamps**	fixed.	The front foglamps are switched on using the ring on the lighting control stalk.	Turn the ring on the lighting control stalk rearward twice to switch off the front foglamps.
	**Rear foglamps**	fixed.	The rear foglamps are on.	Turn the ring on the stalk rearward to switch off the rear foglamps.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Parking brake**	fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	Release the parking brake to switch off the warning lamp, keeping your foot on the brake pedal. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the manual or electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Electric parking brake**	fixed.	The electric parking brake is applied.	Release the electric parking brake to switch off the warning lamp: with your foot on the brake pedal, pull the electric brake control. Observe the safety recommendations. For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.
	**Deactivation of the automatic functions of the electric parking brake**	fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty.	Activate the function (depending on the country of sale) via the vehicle configuration menu or contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	**Diesel engine pre-heating**	fixed.	The ignition switch is at the 2nd position (Ignition on) or the "**START/STOP**" starting button has been pressed.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. Once it goes off, starting is immediate, on condition that the brake pedal remains pressed with an automatic gearbox, or the clutch pedal is pressed fully down with a manual gearbox. The period of illumination of the warning lamp is determined by the ambient conditions (up to about thirty seconds in severe winter conditions). If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Automatic wiping**	fixed.	The wiper control is pushed downwards.	Automatic front wiping is activated. To deactivate automatic wiping, operate the control stalk downwards or put the stalk into another position.
	**Lighting dimmer**	fixed.	The lighting dimmer is making an adjustment.	You can adjust the level of illumination of the instruments between 1 and 16.
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, has been placed in the **"ON"** position. The passenger's front airbag is activated. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.	Move the control switch to the **"OFF"** position to deactivate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, you can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).
	**Stop & Start**	fixed.	When the vehicle stops (red lights, traffic jams, ...) the Stop & Start system has put the engine into STOP mode.	The warning lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically in START mode, as soon as you want to move off.
		flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.	STOP mode is temporarily unavailable. or START mode is invoked automatically.	For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation indicator lamps

If one of the following indicator lamps comes on, this confirms that the corresponding system has been switched off intentionally.
This is may be accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen.

Warning/indicator lamp		is on	Cause	Action/Observations
	**Passenger's airbag system**	fixed in the instrument panel and/or seat belt and front passenger's airbag warning lamps display.	The control switch, located in the glove box, is set to the **OFF** position. The passenger's front airbag is deactivated. You can install a rearward facing child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (airbag warning lamp on).	Set the control to the **"ON"** position to activate the passenger's front airbag. In this case, do not install a rearward facing child seat on this seat.

Engine oil level indicator*



On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, at the same time as the servicing information.

The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.



Oil level correct



Oil level incorrect

This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL**" or the display of a message, accompanied by the service warning lamp and an audible signal.
If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.
For more information on checking the oil level, refer to the corresponding section.



Oil level indicator fault

This is signalled by the flashing of "**OIL--**" or the display of a message.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on checking the oil level, refer to the corresponding section.

* Depending on version.

Service indicator

System that informs the driver when the next service is due, in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule.
The point at which the service is due is calculated from the last service indicator zero reset, according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the level of deterioration of the engine oil may also be taken into account, depending on the country of sale.



More than 1800 miles (3000 km) remain before the next service is due

When the ignition is switched on, no service information appears in the instrument panel central screen.

Between 600 miles (1 000 km) and 1800 miles (3 000 km) remain before the next service is due

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the spanner symbolising the service operations comes on. The distance recorder display line or a specific message in the instrument panel central screen indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due.
For example: 1 700 miles (2 800 km) remain before the next service is due.
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner goes off**; the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. The screen then indicates the total and trip distances.



Less than 600 miles (1 000 km) remain before the next service is due

Example: 560 miles (900 km) remain before the next service is due.
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on** to indicate that a service must be carried out soon.



Service overdue

For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, **the spanner flashes** to indicate that the service must be carried out as soon as possible.
Example: the service is overdue by 180 miles (300 km).
For a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the screen indicates:



A few seconds after the ignition is switched on, the distance recorder resumes its normal operation. **The spanner remains on**.



For BlueHDi Diesel versions, this alert is also accompanied by the fixed illumination of the Service warning lamp when the ignition is switched on.

The spanner comes on if you have exceeded the specified time interval since the last service, as indicated in the manufacturer's service schedule.
For BlueHDi Diesel versions, the spanner may also come on before the normal service point, according to the level of deterioration of the engine oil, which depends on the driving conditions in which the vehicle is used.



Service indicator zero reset

After each service, the service indicator must be reset to zero.
If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- switch off the ignition,
- press and hold the **"…/000"** trip distance recorder zero reset button,
- switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- when the screen indicates **"=/0"** and the spanner disappears, release the button.

Following this operation, if you wish to disconnect the battery, lock the vehicle and wait at least five minutes for the zero reset to be registered.

Range indicators

Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.
In the event of simultaneous system fault and low AdBlue® level, the shortest range figure is the one displayed.

Range greater than 1 500 miles (2 400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically in the instrument panel.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine start prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Remaining range between 350 and 1500 miles (600 and 2 400 km)



When switching on the ignition, the UREA warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (For example "NO START IN 900 miles" means that "Starting will be prevented in 900 miles).
When driving, this display appears every 150 miles (300 km) until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a dealer CITROËN or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Remaining range between 0 and 350 miles (0 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (For example "NO START IN 180 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 180 miles).
When driving, this display appears every 30 seconds until the additive tank has been topped-up.
Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the AdBlue® tank topped-up.
You can also top-up the tank yourself.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart your engine.
For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue® additive



When switching on the ignition, the SERVICE warning lamp comes on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and 0 km or miles - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the system required by regulations prevents engine starting.

! To be able to start the engine, we recommend that you call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the top-up required. If you carry out the top-up yourself, it is essential to add at least 3.8 litres of AdBlue® to the additive tank.
For more information on topping-up the AdBlue® additive, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the the SCR emissions control system

! A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 650 miles (1 100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



The UREA, SERVICE and diagnostic warning lamps comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving, when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

i If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after a self diagnosis test of the SCR emissions control system.

During an authorised driving phase
(between 650 miles and 0 miles) (1 100 km and 0 km)



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 30 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the temporary display in the instrument panel of "NO START IN" and a distance, indicating the remaining range express in miles or kilometres before engine starting is prevented - (e.g.: "NO START IN 350 miles" means "Starting will be prevented in 350 miles").

While driving, this display appears every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart your engine.

Starting prevented



Every time the ignition is switched on, the SERVICE and engine diagnostic warning lamps come on and the UREA warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the temporary display of "NO START IN" and 0 miles or kilometres - ("NO START IN 0 miles" means "Starting prevented").

! You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.



Total distance recorder

Measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.



Trip distance recorder

Measures the distance travelled since it was last reset to zero by the driver.

☞ With the ignition on, press and hold this button until zeros appear.

Setting the time and the time format in the instrument panel with the clock



On the type 1 instrument panel (without audio system), to adjust the time, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the minutes flash,
- ☞ press **A** to increase the minutes or **B** to reduce the minutes,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: the hours flash,
- ☞ press **A** to increase the hours or **B** to reduce the hours,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously: 24 H or 12 H is displayed and flashes,
- ☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the format,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from time setting.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display.

Setting units in the instrument panel with the clock

On the type 1 instrument panel (without audio system), to change the display units, use buttons **A** and **B** then carry out the operations in the following order:

- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously for three seconds: km/h or mph flashes,
- ☞ press button **A** or **B** to change the units,
- ☞ press buttons **A** and **B** simultaneously to exit from setting units.

After approximately 30 seconds without any action, the screen returns to the normal display.

Setting the time and units in the multifunction screen

The other instrument panels are associated with an audio system and a multifunction screen. Refer to the corresponding screens.

Lighting dimmer



Permits manual adjustment of the brightness of the instruments and controls to suit the ambient light level. Only operates when the vehicle lighting is on in night mode.

Activation

- ☞ Press this button to change the brightness of the instruments and controls.
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the minimum setting, release this button, then press again to increase it.
  or
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the maximum setting, release this button, then press again to reduce it.
- ☞ When the lighting reaches the level of brightness required, release this button.

This indicator and the lighting value appear in the middle of the instrument panel during adjustment to show the setting from the 16 levels available.

Deactivation

When the vehicle lighting is off, or in day mode (daytime running lamps on), pressing the button does not have any effect.

Black panel (comfortable night driving display)



When driving at night, it allows certain instrument panel displays to be switched off so as to reduce visual fatigue for the the driver.
The essential driving information, such as the vehicle speed, warning lamps, automatic gearbox gear selected, cruise control or speed limiter information, remains on in the instrument panel.

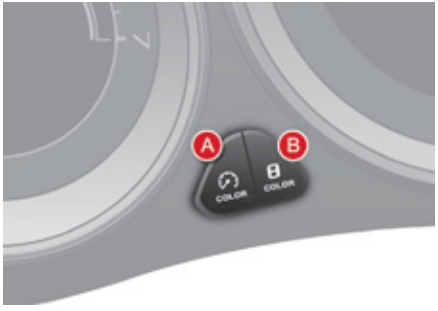
- ☞ With the vehicle lighting on, press this button again to activate the function.
- ☞ Press this button again to deactivate the function.

Touch screen tablet

You can returns to the current display at any time by pressing the black screen or one of the menu buttons.

In automatic illumination of headlamps mode, the "Black panel" function is automatically deactivated once the ambient light level attains an adequate level.

Customising the instrument panel colours



In the instrument panel, you can change the colour of its dials independently from that of the display screens.
There are five colour variants, from white to blue.

- ☞ Press the appropriate button as many times as needed to obtain the desired colour.
  - **A.** For the dials.
  - **B.** For the display screens.

Monochrome screen A

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:
- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- current audio source,
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:
- ☞ the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- ☞ the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ button **A** to change the permanent application (trip computer, audio source...),
- ☞ the **"OK"** button to confirm,
  or
- ☞ the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu

☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**, then press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the various menus:
- "RADIO",
- "MEDIA",
- "TRIP COMPUTER",
- "DATE AND TIME",
- "LANGUAGES",
- "VEHICLE PARAM".

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to select the menu required.

Radio / Media

With the audio system switched on, once the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" menu has been selected you can activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, Radio text) or select the media play mode (normal, random, repeat).
For more information on the "RADIO" or "MEDIA" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



Trip computer

Once the "TRIP COMPUTER" menu has been selected, you can start diagnostics of the status of the equipment (active, not active, faulty).

Date and time

Once the "DATE AND TIME" menu has been selected, you have access to the following settings:

- year,
- month,
- day,
- hours,
- minutes,
- 12 or 24 hour mode.

☞ Once you have selected a setting, press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change its value.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to switch respectively to the previous or next setting.

☞ Press the **"OK"** button to record the change and return to the normal display or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Languages

Once the "LANGUAGES" menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display, from a pre-defined list.

Vehicle parameters

Once the "VEHICLE PARAM" menu has been selected, you can activate or deactivate the following equipment:

- "PARK BRAKE" (Automatic electric parking brake; refer to the "Driving" section).
- "BEND LIGHTING" (Directional lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "AUTO HEADLAMPS" (Automatic illumination of headlamps; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "REAR WIPE ACT" (Rear wiper coupled with reverse gear; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "GUIDE LAMPS" (Guide-me-home lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
- "ELECTRIC BOOT" (Selective unlocking of the boot; refer to the "Access" section),
- "CABIN SELECT" (Selective unlocking; refer to the "Access").

! As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen



This displays the following information:
- time,
- date,
- ambient temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- current audio source,
- telephone or Bluetooth system information,
- trip computer (refer to the corresponding section),
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:
- button **A** to chooses between the display of audio information in full screen or the shared display of audio and trip computer information,
- the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**,
- the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items on the screen,
- the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to change a setting value,
- the **"OK"** button to confirm,
  or
- the **"Back"** button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu



- Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Bluetooth connection",
  - "Personalisation-configuration".
- Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the **"OK"** button.

"Multimedia" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).
For more information on the "Multimedia" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Telephone" menu

With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.
For more information on the "Telephone" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Trip computer" menu

This menu allows you to view information on the status of the vehicle.

Warning log

This summarises the status and warning messages for systems (active, not active or faulty), displaying them in succession in the multifunction screen.

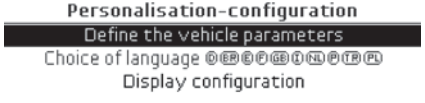
- ☞ Press the **"MENU"** button for access to the main menu.
- ☞ Press the arrows, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"Trip computer"** menu.
- ☞ In the **"Trip computer"** menu, select the "Warning log" line and confirm.

"Bluetooth connection" menu

With the audio system on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be connected or disconnected and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).
For more information on the "Bluetooth connection" application, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.



"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:

- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Choice of language",
- "Display configuration".

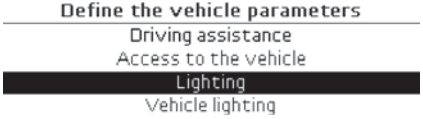
Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate the following equipment, classified in different categories:

- "Access to the vehicle" (refer to the "Access" section):
  - "Plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door),
  - "Unlocking boot only" (Selective unlocking of the boot).
- "Driving assistance":
  - "Parking brake automatic" (Automatic electric parking brake; refer to the "Driving" section),
  - "Rear wipe in reverse gear" (Rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section),
  - "Speeds memorised" (Memorising speeds; refer to the "Driving" section).
- "Vehicle lighting" (refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section):
  - "Directional headlamps" (Main / additional directional lighting),
- "Interior lighting" (refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section):
  - "Follow-me-home headlamps" (Automatic operation of headlamps after switching off the ignition),
  - "Welcome lighting" (Exterior and interior welcome lighting).

For example: setting of the duration of the "follow-me-home" lighting

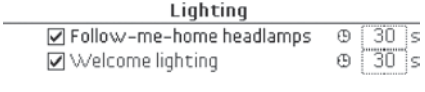
☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons, to select the "Define the vehicle parameters" menu, then the "**OK**" button.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons to select the "Interior lighting" line, then the **"OK"** button; then follow the same procedure to select the "Follow-me-home headlamps" line.



☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to set the value required (15, 30 or 60 seconds), then press the **"OK"** button to confirm.



☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" buttons, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or press the **"Back"** button to cancel.

Choice of language

Once this menu has been selected, you can choose the language used by the display from a pre-defined list.



Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:

- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Display parameters",
- "Brightness".

Adjusting the date and time

☞ Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to display the "Display configuration" menu, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the "Date and time adjustment" button, then press **"OK"**.

☞ Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to select the setting to modify. Confirm by pressing **"OK"**, then modify the setting and confirm again to save the modification.

☞ Adjust the settings one by one, confirming with the **"OK"** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button, then the **"OK"** button to select the **"OK"** box and confirm or the **"Back"** button to cancel.

! As a safety measure, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when stationary.

Touch screen tablet

This system gives access to:
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio and display settings menus,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information.
- the display of alert messages,
- the display of the ambient temperature (a blue snowflake appears if there is a risk of ice),
- the display of the trip computer.

And, depending on equipment, it also allows:
- the display of visual parking sensors information,
- access to the controls for the navigation system and Internet services, and the display of associated information.

! **As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention, with the vehicle stationary.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

It is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through lists, moving the map...). A light wipe is not enough.
The screen does not recognise pressing with more than one finger.
This technology allows use at all temperatures and when wearing gloves.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen tablet.
Do not touch the touch screen tablet with wet hands.
Uses a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen tablet.

Principles

Press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed over one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).


Use this button to go to the secondary page.


Use this button to return to the primary page.

i After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.


Use this button for access to additional information and to the settings for certain functions.


Use this button to confirm.


Use this button to quit.

Menus

Press one of the buttons on the control panel for direct access to a particular menu.



Driving.
Gives access to the trip computer and, depending on version, allows settings to be adjusted for certain functions.
Refer to the corresponding section.

Navigation.
Depending on trim level or country of sale, navigation can be not available, an option or standard equipment.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Radio Media.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Telephone.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Connected services.
The connected services are accessible using the Bluetooth®, Wi-Fi, CarPlay® or MirrorLink™ connections.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

Settings.
Allows configuration of the display and the system.

1. Volume / mute.
Refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

"Driving" menu

The systems with settings that can be adjusted are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	**Speed settings**	Memorisation of speeds for use with the speed limiter or cruise control.

	**Vehicle settings**	Access to other functions with settings that can be adjusted. The functions are grouped together under three tabs:
		- "**Driving assistance**"
		  - "Automatic parking brake" (Automatic electric parking brake; refer to the "Driving" section),
		  - "Automatic rear wiper in reverse" (Activation of rear wiper coupled to reverse gear; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section).
		- "**Lighting**"
		  - "Guide-me-home lighting" (Automatic guide me home lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility"section),
		  - "Welcome lighting" (Exterior welcome lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility"section),
		  - "Adaptive lighting" (Main / additional directional lighting; refer to the "Lighting and visibility" section).
		- "**Vehicle access**"
		  - "Driver plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door; refer to the "Access" section).
		  - "Unlocking boot" (Selective unlocking of the boot; refer to the "Access" section).
		Select or deselect the tabs at the bottom of the screen to display the functions required.

CHECK	**Diagnostic**	List of current alerts.

"Settings" menu

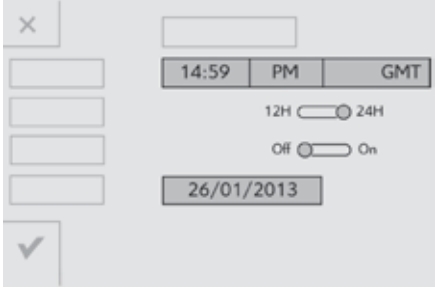
The functions available through this menu are detailed in the table below.

Button	Corresponding function	Comments
	**Audio settings**	Adjustment of volume, balance...
	**Color schemes**	Choice of colour scheme.
	**Turn off screen**	Turns off the display in the the touch screen tablet (black screen). Pressing the black screen restores the display.
	**System Settings**	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit) - distance and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	**Time/Date**	Setting the date and time.
	**Languages**	Choice of language used: French, English, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Serb, Croat, Hungarian.
	**Screen settings**	Adjustment of the display settings (scrolling of text, animations...).
	**Calculator**	Display the calculator.
	**Calendar**	Display the calendar.



Setting the date and time

- Select the "**Settings**" menu.
- In the secondary page, press on "**Time/ Date**".



- Select "**Adjust time**" or "**Adjust date**".



- Modify the settings using the number keypad, then confirm.
- Press "**Confirm**" to save and quit.

When setting the time, you can select "**Satellite synchronisation**", so that the minutes are adjusted automatically by satellite reception.

Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, fuel consumption…).

Monochrome screen A





Information displays

☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various items of trip computer information in succession.

The trip computer provides the following information:

- range,



- current fuel consumption,



- Stop & Start time counter,



- distance travelled,



- average fuel consumption,



- average speed.



☞ The next press then returns you to the normal display.



Trip reset

☞ Press the control for more than two seconds to reset to zero the distance travelled, the average fuel consumption and the average speed.

Monochrome screen C







Information displays

You can choose between two types of display by pressing button **A**:

- the trip computer information appears temporarily above the audio information, displayed permanently in full screen, or
- the trip computer and audio information both appear permanently in a shared screen.



☞ Press the button, located at the end of the **wiper stalk**, to display the various trip computer tabs in succession.

- the current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter,

- the trip **"1"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the first trip.

- the trip **"2"** tab with:
  - the distance travelled,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the average speed, for the second trip.



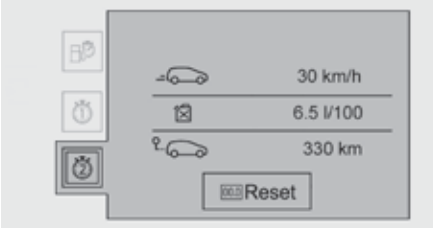
Trip zero reset

☞ When the trip required is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

Touch screen tablet



Display of information

Permanent display:

☞ Select the "**Driving**" menu.

The trip computer information is displayed in the primary page of the menu.

☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a new window:

☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and display the different tabs.

The current instantaneous fuel consumption tab with:
- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.

The trip **"1"** tab with:
- the distance travelled.
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
for the first trip.

The trip **"2"** tab with:
- the distance travelled.
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed,
for the second trip.



Trip reset

☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or press and hold the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips **"1"** and **"2"** are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip **"1"** can be used for daily figures, and trip **"2"** for monthly figures.

A few definitions...

Range



(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (at the average fuel consumption seen over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

i This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the relief, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 20 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed when it exceeds 60 miles (100 km).

! If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption



(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated over the last few seconds.

i This function is only displayed from 20 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption



(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

i The fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher than the official figures obtained by CITROËN during the first 1 800 miles (3 000 km) of the vehicle's life.

Average speed



(mph or km/h)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Distance travelled



(miles or km)

Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

Stop & Start time counter



(minutes / seconds or hours / minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Remote control key

System which permits central unlocking or locking of the vehicle using the door lock or from a distance. It is also used to locate and start the vehicle, as well as providing protection against theft.

Unlocking the vehicle



Unfolding the key

☞ Press this button to unfold the key.

Complete unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock to unlock the vehicle completely.

Selective unlocking using the remote control

☞ Press the open padlock once to unlock the driver's door only.

☞ Press the open padlock again to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The complete or selective door unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Opening the windows using the remote control

☞ Maintain the press on the open padlock until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop as soon as you release the button.

Unlocking using the key

☞ Turn the key forwards in the driver's door lock to unlock the vehicle completely.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

Selective unlocking of the boot



☞ Press the central button on the remote control to unlock the boot. The doors remain locked.

If selective unlocking of the boot is deactivated, pressing this button also unlocks the doors.

! Don't forget to lock the boot again by pressing the closed padlock button.



The complete or selective boot unlocking parameter is set via the vehicle configuration menu. Selective unlocking of the boot is activated by default.

Locking the vehicle

Normal locking using the remote control



☞ Press the closed padlock to lock the vehicle.

Normal locking using the key

☞ Turn the key towards the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open, the central locking does not take place.
However, the alarm (if present) will be completely activated after about 45 seconds.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds.
If the alarm had previously been activated, it will not be reactivated automatically.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Closing the windows using the remote control



☞ Press and hold the closed padlock button until the desired position is obtained. The windows stop when you release the button.

When closing the windows using the remote control you must ensure that nothing prevents them from closing correctly.
If you want to leave the windows partly open, you must deactivate the volumetric alarm monitoring.



Folding the key

☞ Press this button before folding the key.

! If you do not press the button, there is a risk of damaging the remote control.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Back-up control

System allowing the doors to be locked and unlocked manually in the event of a malfunction of the central locking system or battery failure.

Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

You can also apply the procedure described for the passenger doors.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.



Locking the passenger doors

☞ Open the doors.

☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

For more information on the child lock, refer to the corresponding section.

☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the key.

☞ Insert the key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.

☞ Remove the key and refit the cap.

☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the passenger doors

☞ Pull the interior door opening control.

Fault with the remote control

In the event of a malfunction with the remote control, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

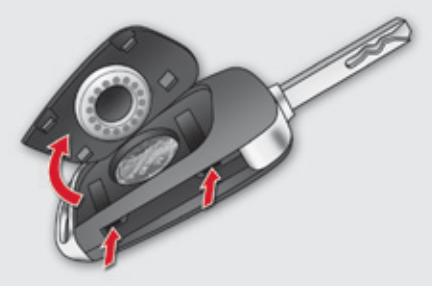
- ☞ First of all, use the key in the lock to unlock or lock your vehicle.
- ☞ Then, reinitialise the remote control.

Reinitialisation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the ignition key.
- ☞ Press the closed padlock immediately for a few seconds.
- ☞ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch.

The remote control is fully operational again.

Changing the battery



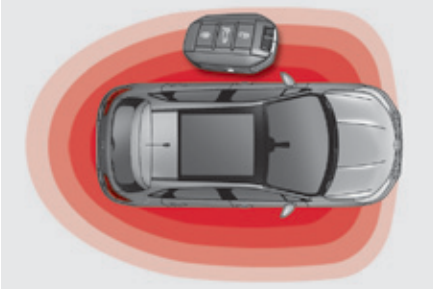
Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.

SERVICE If the battery is flat, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the two cutouts.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its location.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

! If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

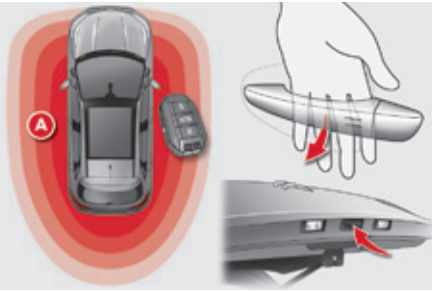
"Keyless Entry and Starting"



System which permits the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle while keeping the electronic key on your person.

The electronic key can also be used as a remote control.
For more information, refer to the "Key / remote control" section.

Unlocking the vehicle



The vehicle or just the driver's door is unlocked, depending on the setting.

Complete unlocking

- With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control.

Selective unlocking

- To unlock only the drivers door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind one of the door handle of the front passenger door with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

Activation or deactivation of the selective unlocking is done in the "**Driving**" menu, then "**Vehicle settings**".
By default, complete unlocking is activated.

The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.
Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
However, the alarm (if present) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

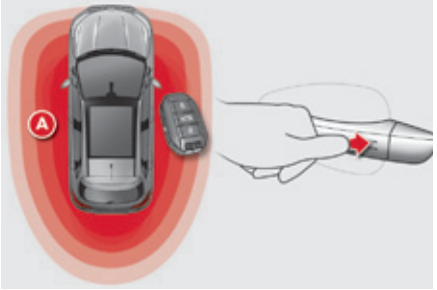
If the vehicle is unlocked by mistake and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock again automatically after about 30 seconds.
If the alarm had been activated previously, it will not be reactivated automatically.

The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Starting system, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking the vehicle



Normal locking

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, press with a finger or thumb on one of the door handles (at the markings).

Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.



! Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct operation of the windows.
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

i The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

! For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.
It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt...) on the inner surface if the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, …) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press the closed padlock on the remote control.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Back-up key

Unlocking / Locking using the integral key with Keyless Entry and Starting

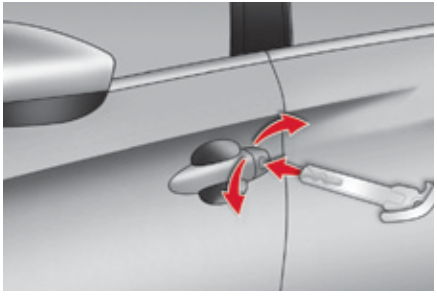


The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when the electronic key cannot operate:

- cell battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, ...
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.

☞ Maintain a pull on button **1**, to extract the integral key **2**.

If the alarm is activated, the audible signal triggered on opening a door with the key (integral with the remote control) will stop when the ignition is switched on.



Locking the driver's door

☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the rear.

Unlocking the driver's door

☞ Insert the integral key in the door lock, then turn it to the front.



Locking the passenger doors

- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.

For more information on the child lock, refer to the corresponding section.

- ☞ Remove the black cap, located on the edge of the door, using the integral key.
- ☞ Insert the integral key in the socket without forcing it, then without turning it, move the latch sideways towards the inside of the door.
- ☞ Remove the integral key and refit the cap.
- ☞ Close the doors and check that the vehicle has locked correctly from the outside.

Unlocking the passenger doors

- ☞ Pull the interior door opening control.



Changing the battery

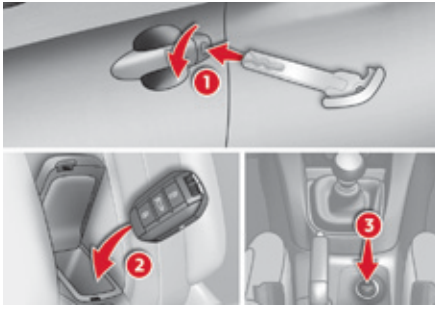
Battery ref.: CR2032 / 3 volts.

Battery replacement is signalled by the display of a message.

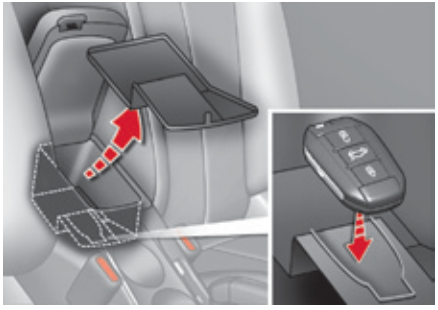
- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cutout.
- ☞ Lift off the cover.
- ☞ Remove the flat battery from its location.
- ☞ Fit the new battery into its location observing the original direction of fitment.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

Remote control problem / reinitialisation

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.



☞ Place the back-up key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.



☞ Open the front armrest.
- Raise the mat by its tongue and remove it.
- Place the electronic key on the back-up reader.

☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "**START/STOP**" button.

The electronic key is fully operational again.

Remember to refit the mat below the armrest after removing the reinitialised electronic key.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key

Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not repeatedly press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. You run the risk of stopping it from working and the remote control would have to be reinitialised.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may make access to the passenger compartment by the emergency services more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Electrical interference

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, ...

Anti-theft protection

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
Don't forget to turn the steering to engage the steering lock.

When purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment.
Take them to an approved collection point.

Central locking control

This control allows the simultaneous locking or unlocking of the doors and boot from inside the vehicle.



Locking

☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button comes on.

i If one of the doors is open, central locking from the inside does not take place.

Unlocking

☞ Press the button again to unlock the vehicle.

The red indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i If the vehicle is locked from the outside, this button is inactive.

☞ In this case, use the remote control or the key to unlock the vehicle or pull an interior door handle to open a door.

Anti-intrusion security

This system allows automatic simultaneous locking of the doors and boot as soon as the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

Operation

If one of the doors or the boot is open, the automatic central locking does not take place.

This is signalled by the sound of the locks rebounding, accompanied by illumination of this symbol in the instrument panel, an audible signal and the display of an alert message.

Carrying long and voluminous objects

If you want to drive with the boot open, you should press the central locking button to lock the the doors. Otherwise, every time the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h), the locks will rebound and the alerts mentioned above will appear.

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle.
Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.



Activation / Deactivation

You can activate or deactivate this function permanently.

☞ With the ignition on, press this button until an audible signal starts and a corresponding message is displayed.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

Alarm*

System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot, the bonnet...

- interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

- tilt

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

Self-protection function

The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring are put out of service or damaged.

! For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system



Activation

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Lock the vehicle with the remote control.
  or
- ☞ Lock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

Following an instruction to lock the vehicle, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after a delay of 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after a delay of 45 seconds.

i If an opening (door, boot...) is not closed fully, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after a delay of 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

Deactivation

- ☞ Press the unlocking button on the remote control.
  or
- ☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically. To reactivate the system, it is necessary to unlock the vehicle and then lock it again using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by sea.



Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press the button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
☞ Get out of the vehicle.
☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.

To be effective, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

☞ Deactivate the perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
☞ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle with the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system.
The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.
When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Starting system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

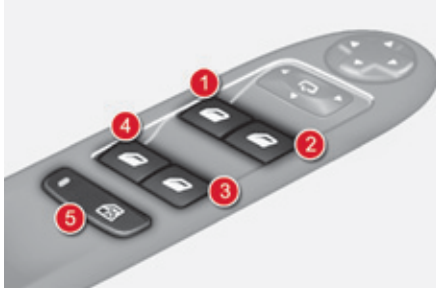
- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key(integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows

Fitted with a safety anti-pinch system and a deactivation system for the rear controls.



1. **Driver's electric window.**
2. **Passenger's electric window.**
3. **Rear right electric window.**
4. **Rear left electric window.**
5. **Deactivation of the rear electric window controls.**

One-touch electric windows



There are two options:

- **manual mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control gently. The window stops when the control is released.
- **automatic mode**
  - ☞ Press or pull the control firmly. The window opens or closes fully when the control is released.
  - ☞ Pressing the control again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off or until the vehicle is locked after a door is opened.
If one of the passenger windows cannot be operated from the driver's door control panel, carry out the operation from the control panel of the passenger door in question.

After approximately ten consecutive complete opening/closing movements of the window, a protection function is activated which only authorises closing of the window to prevent damage to the electric window motor.
Once the window is closed, the controls will become operational again after approximately 40 minutes.

Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and partially lowers again.

If the window cannot be closed (for example, in the presence of ice), once the window has lowered:

- ☞ press and hold the control until the window opens fully,
- ☞ then pull the control immediately and hold it until the window closes,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Reinitialisation

After reconnecting the battery or a fault, you must be reinitialise the operation of the electric windows. For each of the control switches on the driver's side control panel:

- ☞ pull the control until the window stops,
- ☞ release the control and pull it again until the window closes fully,
- ☞ continue to hold the control for approximately one second after the window has closed,
- ☞ press the control to lower the window automatically to the low position,
- ☞ when the window has reached the low position, press the control again for approximately one second.

The safety anti-pinch function is not operational during these operations.

Deactivation of the rear electric window controls



☞ For the safety of your children, press control **5** to deactivate the rear electric window controls, regardless of their position.

Indicator lamp on, the rear controls are deactivated.

Indicator lamp off, the rear controls are activated.

! If an obstacle is encountered during operation of the electric windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the control concerned.

When the driver operates the controls for the passengers' electric windows, they must ensure that nothing is preventing the windows closing correctly.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

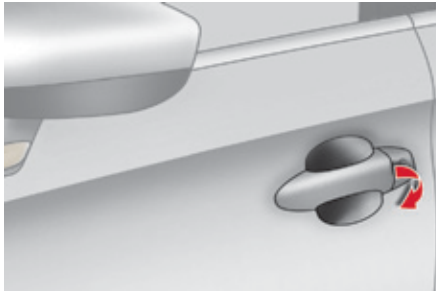
Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Take care of any passengers and/or other persons present when closing the windows using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Always remove the key from the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

Doors

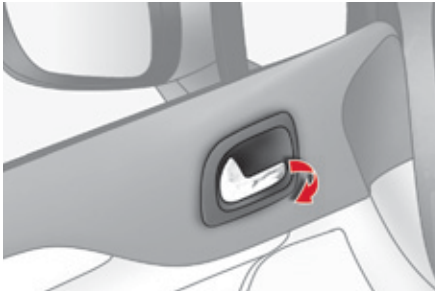
Opening



From outside

☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

i When the selective unlocking is activated, the first press of the remote control unlocking button permits unlocking of the driver's door only.



From inside

☞ Pull the interior control lever of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

i With the selective unlocking activated:
- opening the the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
- opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

Closing

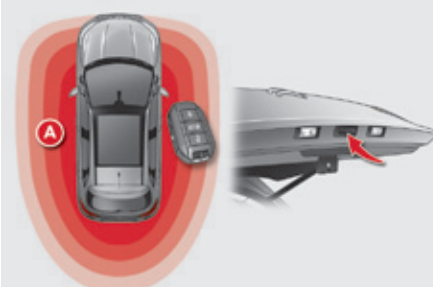
When a door is not closed correctly:

- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an audible signal for a few seconds.

Boot

Opening

The vehicle or just the boot is unlocked, depending on the setting.



Complete unlocking

☞ After unlocking the vehicle or the boot with the Keyless Entry and Starting system electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot opening control then raise the tailgate.

Selective unlocking

By default, complete unlocking is activated. This setting is done in the **"Driving"** menu, then **"Vehicle settings"** and **"Vehicle access"**.

When unlocking of the boot only is activated:

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot unlocking control to unlock just the boot, then raise the tailgate.

Unlocking is signalled by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds.

Use this button for access to additional information.

Closing

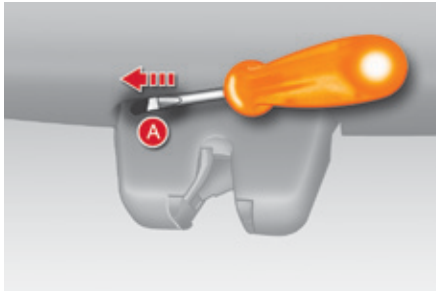
☞ Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

If the boot is not closed correctly:

- with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed below 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of an alert message for a few seconds.
- with the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), in addition to the warning lamp and alert message, there is an an audible signal for a few seconds.

Tailgate release

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.



Unlocking

- ☞ Fold back the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the tailgate.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

Locking after closing

If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Front seats

Manual adjustments

! As a safety measure, seat adjustments should only be done when stationary.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.



Forwards-backwards

- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ☞ Release the control to lock the position.



Seat height

- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary, to obtain the position required.



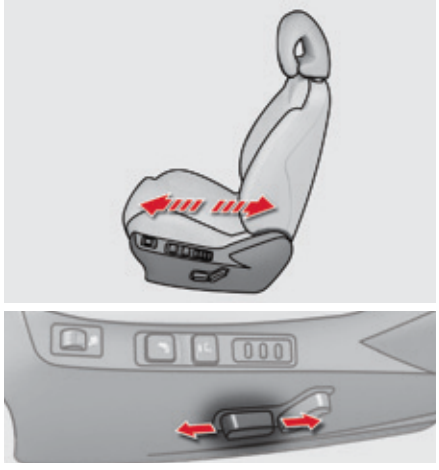
Seat backrest angle

- ☞ Turn the control knob to adjust the seat backrest angle.

Driver's seat electric adjustments

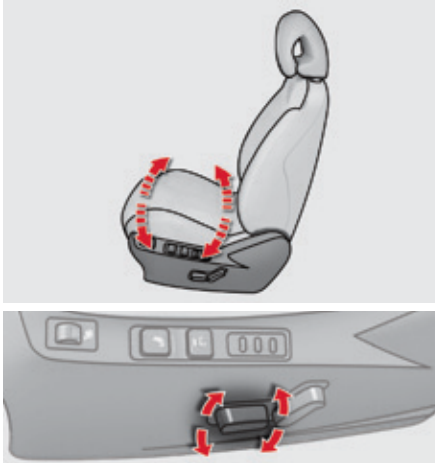
The electrical functions of the driver's seat are deactivated approximately one minute after the ignition is switched off.
To reactivate them, switch on the ignition.

Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat, so as to avoid the risk of of jamming the seat caused by the presence of objects on the floor behind the seat or rear passengers. If the seat jams, stop the movement immediately.



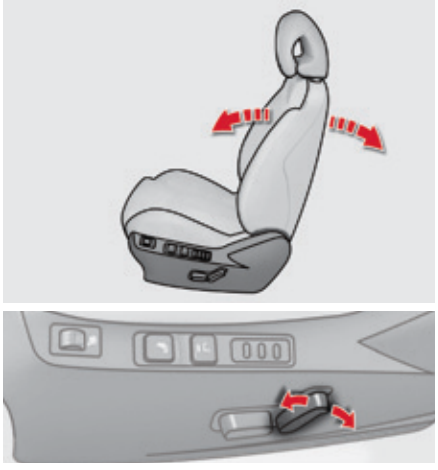
Forwards-backwards

- Push the control forwards or rearwards to slide the seat.



Cushion height and angle

- Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.



Seat backrest angle

- Tilt the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

Additional adjustments



Head restraint height and angle

- To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and the head restraint at the same time.
- To adjust the angle of the head restraint, tilt its lower part forwards or rearwards.

! The head restraint is fitted with a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.
The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

- To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings keeping them in line with the seat back and press the lug **A** at the same time.

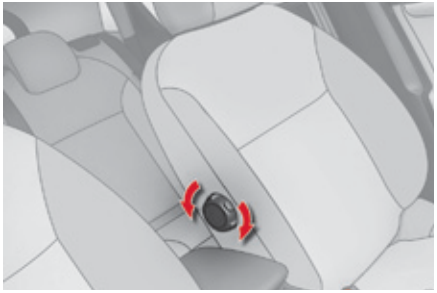
! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and adjusted correctly.



Heated seats control

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- Use the adjustment dial, placed on the side of each front seat, to switch on and select the level of heating required:
  0: Off.
  1: Low.
  2: Medium.
  3: High.



Manual lumbar adjustment

☞ Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.



Electric lumbar adjustment

☞ Press the front or rear of the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function



This function provides a back massage; it only operates when the engine is running.

☞ Press the switch to activate the function.

The warning lamp on the switch comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 60 minutes. During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes each cycle (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes break).

After an hour, the function is automatically deactivated. The warning lamp in the switch goes off.

Deactivation

You can deactivate the massage function at any time by pressing the switch. The movement in progress continues until the initial non-massage position is reached.

Storing driving positions

System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat and door mirrors. It enables you to store and recall two positions using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.



Storing a position

Using buttons M / 1 / 2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.
  An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

ℹ Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

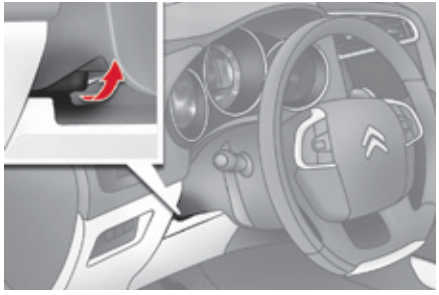
Recalling a stored position

Ignition on or engine running

- ☞ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.
  An audible signal confirms that adjustment is complete.

ℹ You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Steering wheel adjustment



- **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Push the control lever to lock the adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety measure, these operations should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.
They can also be folded for parking in confined spaces.



Adjustment

- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in all four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to the central position.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

Demisting / Defrosting

If your vehicle is fitted with heated mirrors, the demisting-defrosting operates by switching on the heated rear screen.

For more information on demisting and defrosting the rear screen, refer to the corresponding section.

! The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.



Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle using the remote control or the key.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If necessary the mirrors can be folded manually.

Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

Programming

- With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- Select and adjust the left-hand and right-hand mirrors in succession.

The adjustment is stored immediately.

Switching on

- With the engine running, engage reverse gear.
- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.

The glass of the mirror selected tilts downwards, in accordance with its programming.

Switching off

- Exit reverse gear and wait ten seconds.

or

- Return control **A** to the central position.

The mirror glass returns to its initial position.
The mirror glass also returns to its initial position:

- if the speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- if the engine is switched off.

Rear view mirror

Adjustable mirror providing a central rearward view.
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps from other vehicles...



Manual day/night model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position

☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.
☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

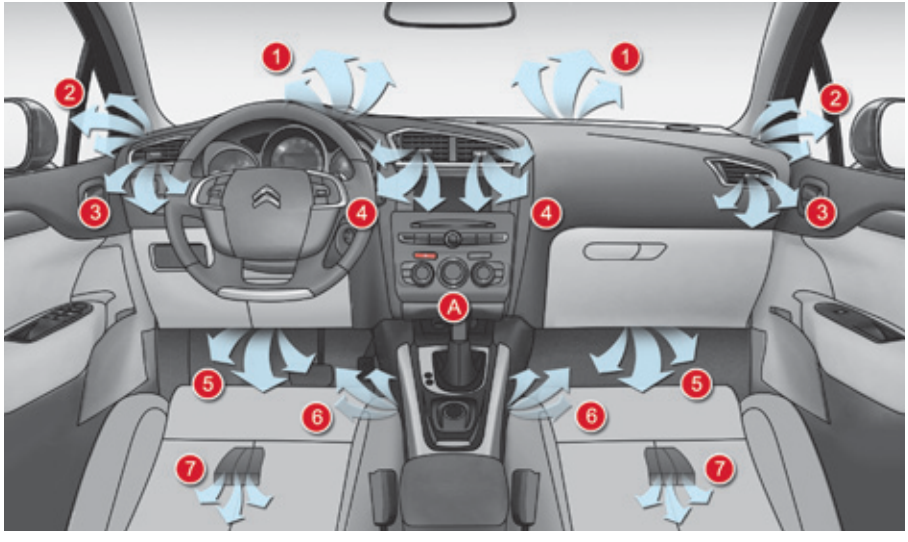


Automatic day/night model

By means of a sensor, which measures the light from the rear of the vehicle, this system automatically and progressively changes between the day and night uses.

i In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Ventilation / Heating



Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Air treatment

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

Control panel

The controls of this system are grouped together on control panel **A** on the centre console.

Air distribution

1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.
2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Side adjustable air vents.
4. Central adjustable air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air nozzles to the front footwells.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.
The air conditioning system does not contain chlorine and does not present any danger to the ozone layer.

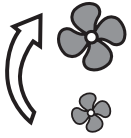
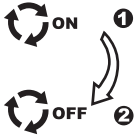
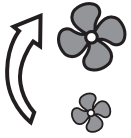
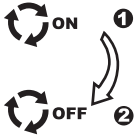
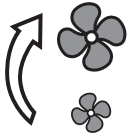
The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on Stop & Start, refer to the corresponding section.

Advice

Interior settings

I require...	Heating or Manual air conditioning				
	Air distribution	Air flow	Recirculation of interior air / Intake of exterior air	Temperature	Manual AC
HOT					—
COLD					ON
DEMISTING DEFROSTING					ON

Digital air conditioning: use the automatic mode in preference by pressing the **"AUTO"** button.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.



1. Temperature adjustment



☞ Turn the dial to select a position between blue (cold) and red (hot) so as to adjust the temperature to your requirements.

2. Air flow adjustment



This dial is used to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

☞ Turn the dial from position **1** to position **5** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

i ☞ If you place the air flow control in position **0**, the system is deactivated. However, a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

! Avoid driving too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

3. Air distribution adjustment

This dial is used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.



Windscreen and side windows.



Windscreen, side windows and footwells.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.



The air distribution can be adapted by placing the dial in an intermediate position.

4. Air intake / Air recirculation

The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. The recirculation of interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and smoke.

> i This function allows hot or cold air to be delivered selectively and more quickly.

Return to exterior air intake as soon as possible to prevent deterioration of the the air quality and the formation of mist.



☞ Press the button to recirculate the interior air. The indicator lamp comes on to confirm this.

☞ Press the button again to permit the intake of exterior air. The indicator lamp goes off to confirm this.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3 °C.

Switching on

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button, the button's indicator lamp comes on.

> i The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment control **2** is in position "**0**".
> To obtain cooled air more quickly, you can use recirculation of interior air for a few moments. Then return to fresh air intake.

Switching off

☞ Press the **"A/C"** button again, the button's indicator lamp goes off.

Switching off may affect comfort levels (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone digital air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates when the engine is running.

Automatic operation



1. Automatic comfort programme



We recommend the use of one of the three AUTO modes available: they provide optimised regulation of the temperature in the passenger compartment according to the comfort value that you have chosen.

These three modes automatically adjust the air flow, according to the desired setting, while also maintaining the desired comfort value.

This system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

☞ Press the **"AUTO"** button repeatedly:
- a first indicator lamp comes on; the "light" setting mode is selected,
- a second indicator lamp comes on; the "medium" setting mode is selected,
- a third indicator lamp comes on; the "intense" mode setting is selected.

When the engine is cold, the air flow will reach its optimum level progressively, taking account of the weather and the desired comfort level so as to avoid too great a distribution of cold air.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value, there is no need to change the value displayed in order to obtain the comfort required.
The system corrects the difference in temperature automatically and as quickly as possible.

2. Driver's side adjustment

3. Passenger's side adjustment



The driver and front passenger can each adjust the temperature to their requirements.

The value indicated on the display corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a temperature in degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left or to the right respectively to decrease or increase this value.

A setting around the value 21 provides optimum comfort. However, depending on your requirements, a setting between 18 and 24 is normal.
You are advised to avoid a left / right setting difference of more than 3.

4. Automatic visibility programme



For more information on the automatic visibility programme, refer to the "Front demisting - defrosting" section.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Manual operation

If you wish, you can make a different choice from that offered by the system by changing a setting. The the **"AUTO"** indicator lamps go off; the other functions will still be controlled automatically.

☞ Pressing the **"AUTO"** button returns the system to completely automatic operation.

i For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, it is possible to exceed the minimum value 14 or the maximum value 28.

☞ Turn control **2** or **3** to the left until **"LO"** is displayed or to the right until **"HI"** is displayed.

5. Air conditioning On / Off



☞ Press this button to switch off the air conditioning.

Switching the system off could result in discomfort (humidity, condensation).

☞ Press this button again to return to automatic operation of the air conditioning. The indicator lamp on the **"A/C"** button comes on.

6. Air distribution adjustment



☞ Press one or more buttons to direct the air flow towards:

- the windscreen and side windows (demisting or defrosting),
- the outer and centre air vents,
- the footwells.

You can combine the three orientations to obtain the desired air distribution.

7. Air flow adjustment



☞ Turn this control to the left to decrease the air flow or to the right to increase the air flow.

The air flow indicator lamps, between the two fans, come on progressively in relation to the value requested.

8. Air intake / Air recirculation



☞ Press this button for recirculation of the interior air. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Air recirculation enables the passenger compartment to be isolated from exterior odours and smoke.

☞ As soon as possible, press this button again to permit the intake of outside air and prevent the formation of condensation. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

! Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

9. "REST" function: ventilation with the engine off



Even with the engine is off, you can operate the ventilation for a few minutes.

For example, while you are away from the vehicle, the passengers can still enjoy some air circulation without having the engine running. This function is available after switching on the ignition, as well as after stopping the engine. The period that the function is available depends on the state of charge of the battery. You can activate the "REST" function while the air conditioning control screens are on.

On switching on the engine

- The control screens come on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.
- The function can be deactivated and reactivated if the control screens are on.
- The screens go off at the end of this period.

On stopping the engine

- While the control screens remain on: the function is available.
- Pressing the **REST** button activates the ventilation for a few minutes. Activation of the function is confirmed by the display of two dashes in the control screens and four air flow level indicator lamps.
  Locking the vehicle has no effect on this function.
- The control screens go off at the end of this period.
  Pressing again before the end of the period interrupts off the ventilation definitively: the control screens go off and the function is no longer available.

This switch does not operate the air conditioning, only the air fan.
When the "REST" function is activated, you cannot modify the temperature, air flow and distribution settings: these are controlled automatically according to the ambient temperature.
This function is not available in the STOP mode of Stop & Start.

Switching the system off



☞ Turn the air flow control to the left until all of the indicator lamps go off.

This action switches off the air conditioning and the ventilation.
Temperature related comfort is no longer assured but a slight flow of air, due to the movement of the vehicle, can still be felt.

☞ Modify the settings (temperature, air flow or air distribution) or press the **"AUTO"** button to reactivate the system with the values set before it was switched off.

Avoid prolonged operation in interior air recirculation mode or driving for long periods with the system off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Front demist - defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With manual air conditioning

- ☞ Put the temperature, air flow and distribution controls to the dedicated marked position.
- ☞ Put the air intake control to the "Exterior air intake" position
(indicator lamp on the control off).
- ☞ Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the **"A/C"** button; the warning lamp in the button comes on.

i With Stop & Start, when the demisting, air conditioning and air flow functions are activated, STOP mode is not available.

With digital dual-zone air conditioning

Automatic visibility programme

- ☞ Select this programme to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To stop the programme, press either the **"visibility"** button again or **"AUTO"**, the warning lamp on the button goes off and the warning lamp on the **"AUTO"** button comes on.

The system starts again with the values in use before it was overridden by the visibility programme.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, the STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist - defrost



The control button is located on the air conditioning system control panel.

Switching on

The rear screen demisting/defrosting can only operate when the engine is running.

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and (depending on version) the door mirrors. The indicator lamp associated with the button comes on.

Switching off

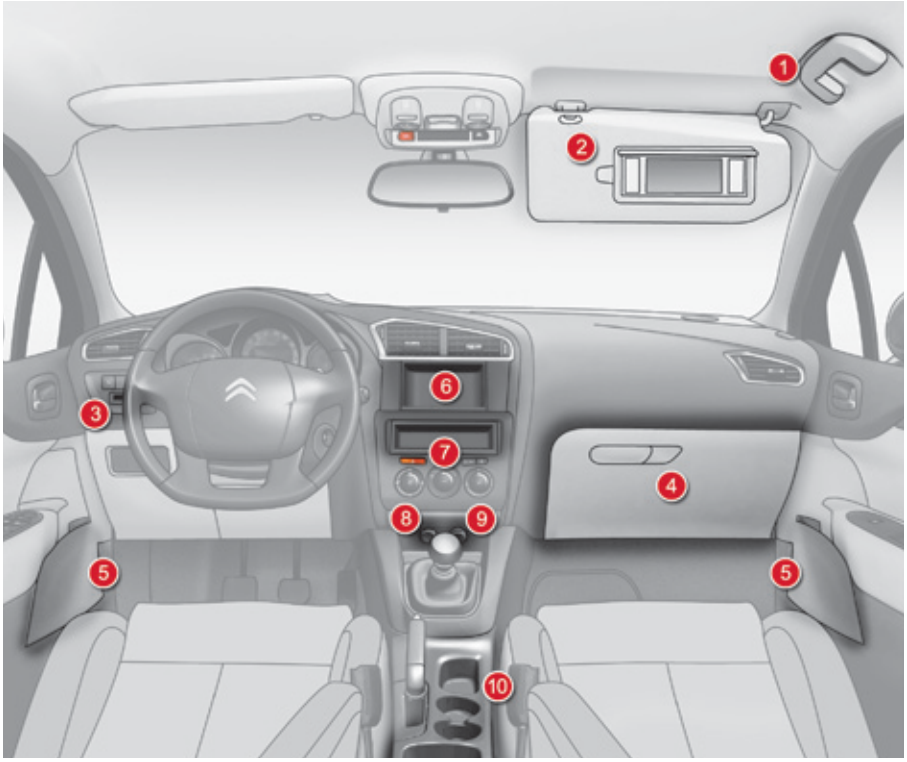
The demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of current.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing the button again. The indicator lamp associated with the button goes off.

☞ Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

Front fittings

1. **Grab handle**
2. **Sun visor**
   (see details on a following page)
3. **Ticket holder**
4. **Illuminated glove box**
   (see details on a following page)
5. **Door pockets**
6. **Large open storage box (without audio system)**
   or
   Small storage box with flap (with audio system)
7. **Small open storage box (without audio system)**
8. **USB port / Auxiliary socket**
   (see details on a following page)
9. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on following pages)
10. **Centre armrest with storage**
    (see details on a following page)



Sun visor

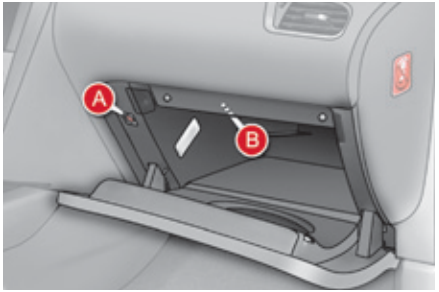


Component which protects against sunlight from the front or the side, also equipped with an illuminated vanity mirror.

☞ With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; the mirror is illuminated automatically.

This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

Illuminated glove box



It has dedicated locations for storing a water bottle, the vehicle's handbook pack...

Its lid has locations for storing a pen, a pair of glasses, tokens, maps, a cup...

☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle.

The glove box is illuminated when the lid is opened.

It gives access to the passenger's front airbag deactivation switch **A**.

It contains an adjustable ventilation nozzle **B**, distributing the same conditioned air as the vents in the passenger compartment.

12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor telephone reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB Player



This connection box comprises a USB port and a Jack auxiliary socket.

USB port

The USB port allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player of the iPod® type or a USB memory stick.
The USB player reads your audio files, which are transmitted to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

> When connected to the USB port, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the current delivered by the vehicle.

The USB also allows a telephone to be connected by a MirrorLink™ connection, so that use can be made in the touch screen tablet of certain applications on the telephone.

Jack auxiliary socket

The Jack auxiliary socket allows the connection of a portable device, such as a digital audio player, so that your audio files can be heard through the vehicle's speakers.
The management of these files is from the portable device.

For more information, refer to the corresponding part of the "Audio and telematics" section.

Courtesy lamps





1. **Front courtesy lamp**
2. **Front map reading lamps**
3. **Rear courtesy lamp**
4. **Rear map reading lamps**

Front and rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked,
- when the key is removed from the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is used to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

In permanent lighting mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- with the ignition off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

When the courtesy lamp is in the "permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, except if it is in the "permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the the "permanently off" position.

Front and rear map reading lamps

With the ignition on, press the corresponding switch.

Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

Interior mood lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on

At night, two interior mood lamps in the front courtesy lamp come on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.



Switching off

The interior mood lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.
It can be switched off manually by adjusting the instrument panel lighting rheostat button to one of the lowest settings.



Panoramic sunroof

Your vehicle is fitted with a tinted glass panoramic sunroof which increases the light and visibility in the passenger compartment. Its electric blind helps control the temperature in the passenger compartment.

Electric blind



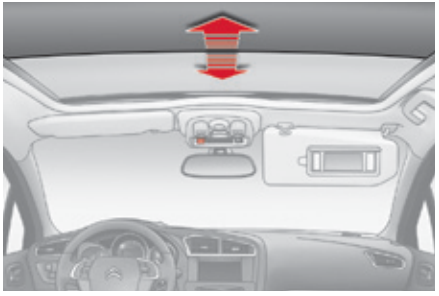
The blind is controlled electrically by a rotary dial.

Opening

Turn the dial to the left (four possible settings).

Closing

Return the dial to the initial position.



If the position of the blind does not agree with the position indicated by the dial, press the dial to open the blind to this position.

Safety anti-pinch

If the blind encounters an obstacle during closing, it stops and partially opens again.
If the blind fails to close at a second attempt, it may be necessary to force the closing of the blind using the reinitialisation procedure.

Reinitialising the system

Following reconnection of the battery, or in the event of a malfunction in its operation, it may be necessary to reinitialise the system:

- ☞ turn the dial to the fully closed position,
- ☞ then immediately press the dial, closing starts after about 10 seconds,
- ☞ maintain pressure on the dial until the blind has fully closed.

The anti-pinch function is inoperative during these operations.

! In the event of contact during operation of the blind, you must reverse its movement. To do this, turn the dial.
When the driver operates the dial, they must ensure that nothing prevents the blind from closing correctly.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the blind correctly.
Be aware of children during operation of the blind.

Centre consoles

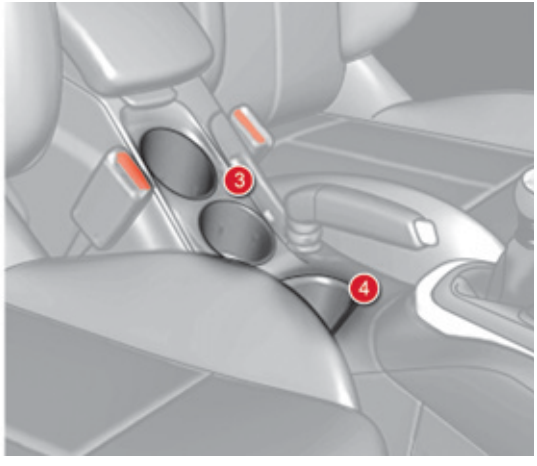
Low version



1. **Storage pocket**
2. **Cup holder**
3. **Large open storage box**

Semi-raised version



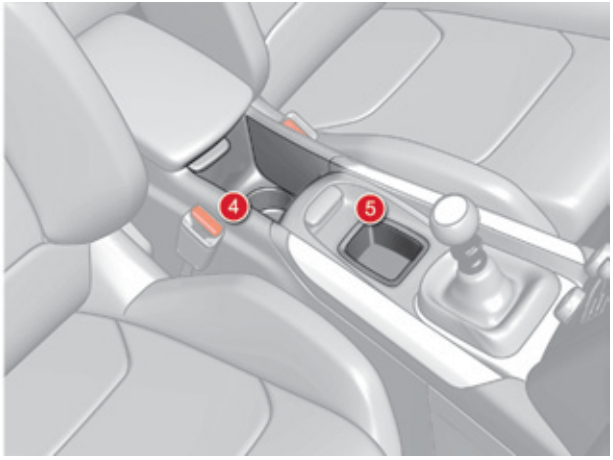


1. **Front armrest**
   (see details on following pages)
2. **Open storage**
3. **Cup holder**
4. **Storage pocket**

Tall version

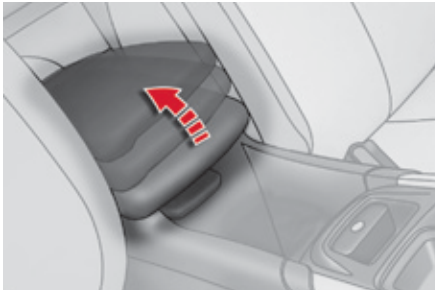
1. **Front armrest**
   (see details on following pages)
2. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on following pages)
3. **Storage box**
4. **Cup holder / Bottle holder**
5. **Storage pocket or START/STOP button (depending on version)**





Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.
The height and length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.



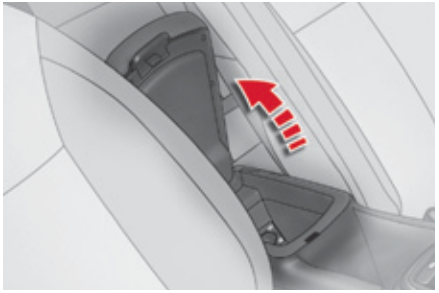
Height adjustment

- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.



Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.



Storage

There is a storage space below the cover of the armrest. Depending on equipment, this can contain a 230 V / 50 Hz socket and the back-up reader for the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

- ☞ Raise the lever.
- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

Front armrest

Comfort and storage system for the driver and front passenger.
The length of the armrest cover can be adjusted.



Longitudinal adjustment

- ☞ To move forwards, raise the lever.
  The armrest slides forwards to its stop.
- ☞ To stow it, slide it fully back and press down to lock it.



Storage

There is a storage space below the cover of the armrest. Depending on equipment, this can contain the back-up reader for the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system.

- ☞ Raise the cover fully.

230 V / 50 Hz power socket



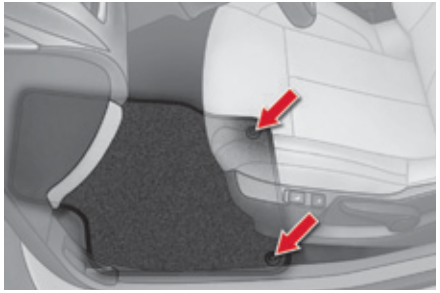
A 230 V / 50 Hz socket (maximum power: 120 W) is fitted to the centre console.
To use the socket:

- ☞ lift the front armrest cover for access to its compartment,
- ☞ check that the warning lamp is on green,
- ☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer...).

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode on Stop & Start.
In the event of a fault with the socket, the green warning lamp flashes.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload...), the power supply to the socket will be cut off; the green warning lamp goes off.

Mats



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removal

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ refit the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

! To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control / speed limiter.
The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

Storage drawers

Located under each front seat, except for the driver's seat on versions with electric seat.



Opening

☞ Raise the front of the drawer and pull it open.

! Do not place heavy objects in the drawer.

Removal

Avoid removing the drawer completely, as refitting it is not easy.

☞ Open the drawer fully.

☞ Pull the drawer upwards to disengage it.

Refitting

However, if it has been completely removed, to put it back in place:

☞ use the torch to illuminate the area under the seat,

☞ engage the drawer in its runners,

☞ lift the retaining tongues and slide the drawer under these tongues,

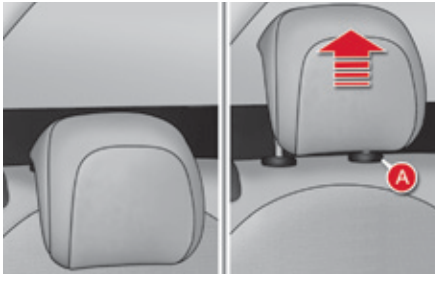
☞ at the end of its travel, press down on the drawer to engage it.

Rear seats

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and split backrests (1/3 - 2/3) which can be folded individually to adapt the load space in the boot.

Rear head restraints

These have one position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).



They can also be removed.
To remove a head restraint:

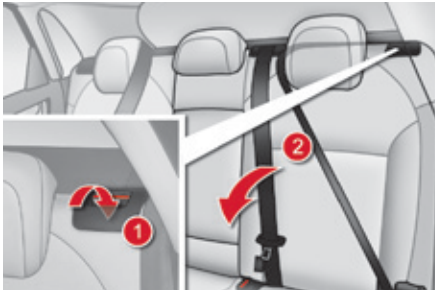
- release the backrest using control **1**,
- tilt the backrest **2** slightly forwards,
- pull the head restraint upwards to the stop,
- then, press the lug **A**.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be in place and correctly adjusted.

Folding the backrest



- Move the corresponding front seat forward if necessary.
- Position the seat belt between the outer and centre head restraints to avoid trapping the belt when repositioning the seat backrest.
- Place the head restraints in the low position.



- Pull control **1** forwards to release the seat back **2**.
- Fold the seat back **2** on to the cushion.

Repositioning the seat backrest



- ☞ Straighten the seat back **2** and secure it.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to the control **1**, is no longer visible.
- ☞ Put the seat belt back in place on the side of the seat backrest.

! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Rear fittings

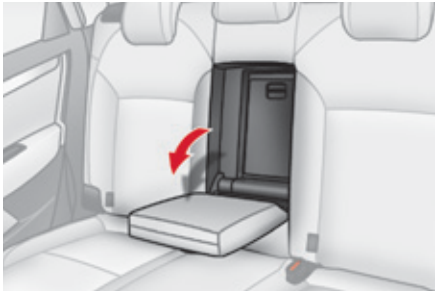
12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

Rear armrest

Comfort system for the rear passengers.



☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

This also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

Arrangement for storing and transporting long objects.

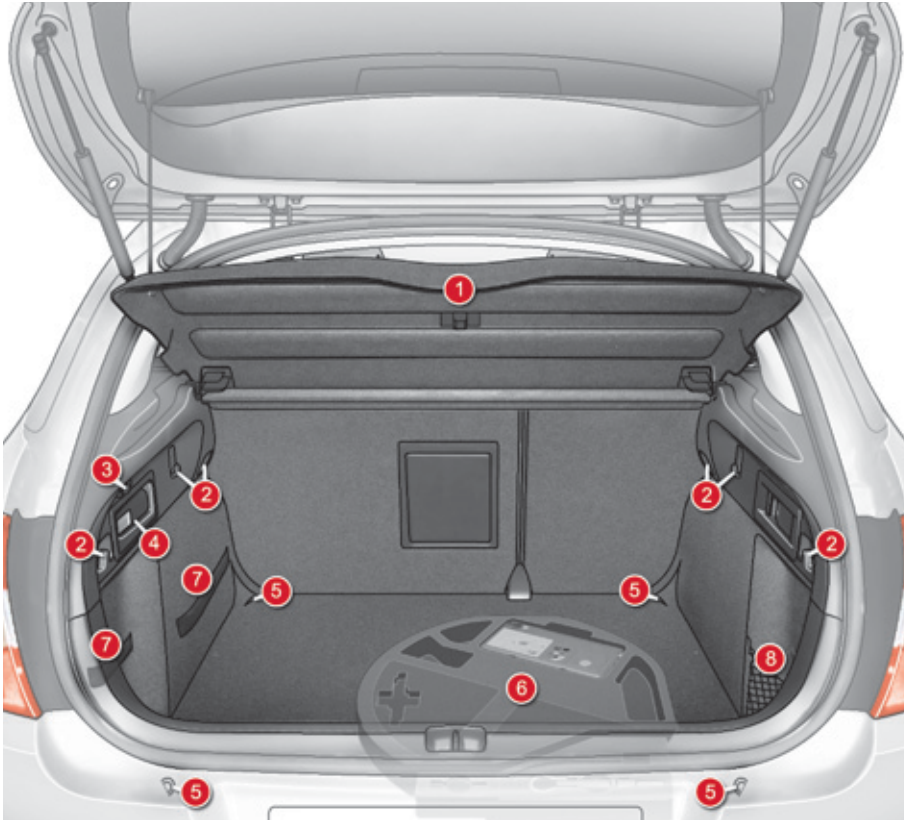


Opening

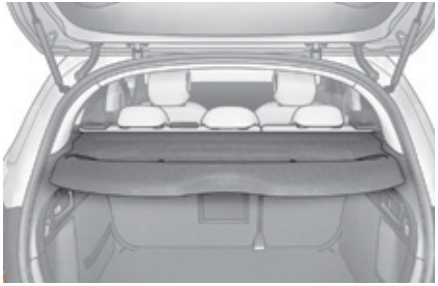
☞ Lower the rear armrest.
☞ Pull the flap handle downwards.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

Boot fittings

1. **Rear parcel shelf**
   (see details on a following page)
2. **Hooks**
   (see details on a following page)
3. **12 V accessory socket**
   (see details on a following page)
4. **Torch**
   (see details on following pages)
5. **Lashing rings**
6. **Storage box**
   (see details on following pages)
7. **Retaining straps**
8. **Storage net**



Rear parcel shelf



To remove the shelf:

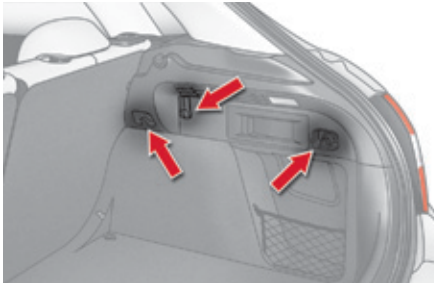
☞ unhook the two cords,

☞ raise the shelf slightly, then remove it.

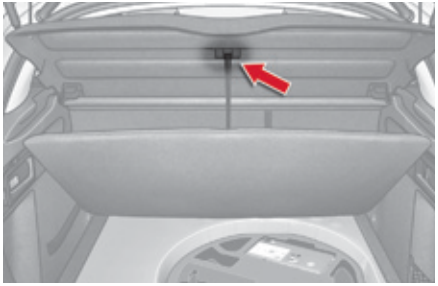
There are several options for storing the shelf:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat at the base of the boot.

Hooks



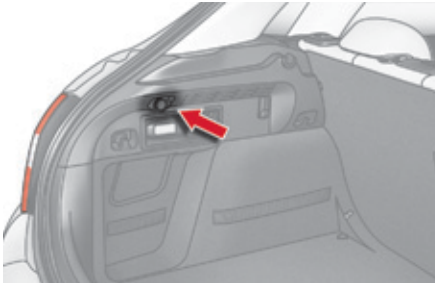
The hooks can be used to secure shopping bags.



Access to the storage box

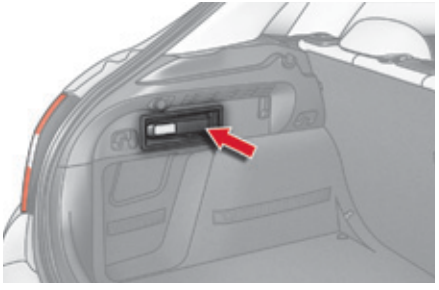
An additional hook under the shelf is used to hold up the boot floor using its cord, to facilitate access to the tools and spare wheel or the temporary puncture repair kit...

12 V accessory socket



☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 W), remove the cap and connect an appropriate adaptor.
☞ Turn the key to the ignition on position.

Torch

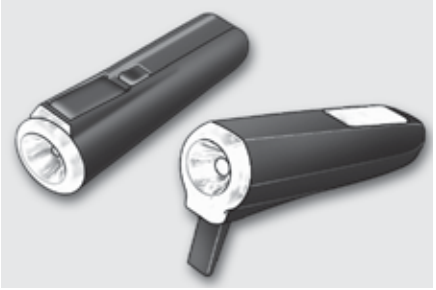


This is a removable lamp, fitted in the boot wall, which can be used to light the boot or as a torch.
For information on the boot lamp, refer to the corresponding section.

Operation

This torch operates with NiMH type rechargeable batteries.
It has a battery life of approximately 45 minutes and charges while you are driving.

! Observe the polarities when fitting the rechargeable batteries.
Never replace the rechargeable batteries with normal disposable batteries.



Use

- ☞ Extract the torch from its location pulling it upwards.
- ☞ Press the switch, located on the back, to switch the torch on or off.
- ☞ Unfold the support, located on the back, to set down and raise the torch; for example, when changing a wheel.

Storing

- ☞ Put the torch back in place in its location starting with the lower part.
  If you have forgotten to switch off the torch, this switches it off automatically.

i If the torch is not engaged correctly, it may not charge and may not come on when the boot is opened.

Storage box



- ☞ Raise the boot carpet for access to the storage box.

This has areas for the storage of a box of spare bulbs, a first aid kit, two warning triangles...
It also contains the vehicle tools, the temporary puncture repair kit...

Boot lamp

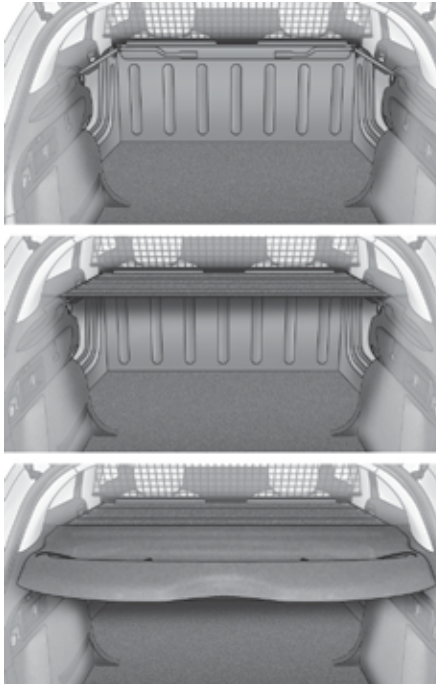


This comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.

The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

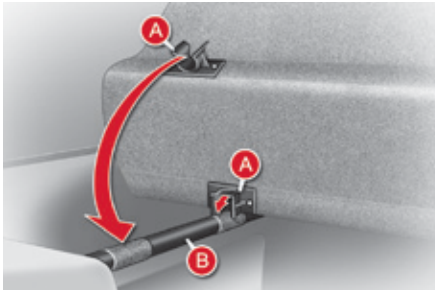
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- when the engine is running, no limit.

Luggage cover (enterprise version)



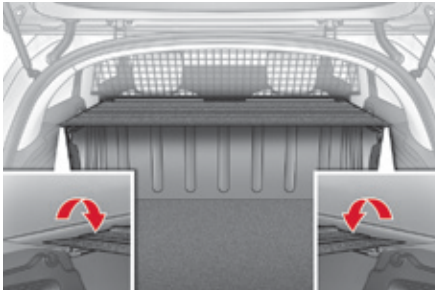
This conceals the interior of the vehicle in combination with your rear parcel shelf.

Installation



☞ Insert the fixings **A** on the frame **B** while unrolling the luggage cover.

Stowage



☞ Roll up the luggage cover near the rear seats.

Removal

☞ Unhook all of the fixings.
☞ Lift the luggage cover on each side.

! Do not place hard or heavy objects on the luggage cover.
They could become dangerous projectiles in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Lighting controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear lamps providing the vehicle's lighting.

Main lighting

The various front and rear lamps of the vehicle are designed to adapt the driver's visibility progressively according to the climatic conditions:

- sidelamps, to be seen,
- dipped beam headlamps to see without dazzling other drivers,
- main beam headlamps to see clearly when the road is clear.

Additional lighting

Other lamps are provided to meet the requirements of particular driving conditions:

- rear foglamps,
- front foglamps with cornering lighting,
- directional headlamps for improved visibility when cornering,
- daytime running lamps to be more visible during the day,
- guide-me-home and welcome lighting to facilitate access to the vehicle,
- parking lamps as vehicle position markers.

Settings

The setting of some functions can be adjusted:

- automatic illumination of headlamps,
- guide-me-home lighting,
- welcome lighting,
- directional lighting.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

Travelling abroad

Halogen and xenon headlamps

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamp dipped beams must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual controls

Model without AUTO lighting



Model with AUTO lighting



The lighting is controlled directly by the driver by means of the ring **A** and the stalk **B**.

A. Main lighting mode selection ring: turn it to position the symbol required facing the mark.

0	Lighting off (ignition off) / Daytime running lamps (engine running).
AUTO	Automatic illumination of headlamps.
	Sidelamps.
	Dipped headlamps or main beam headlamps.

B. Stalk for switching headlamps: pull the stalk towards you to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In the lamps off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash") by maintaining a pull on the stalk.

Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Model with rear foglamps only



Model with front and rear foglamps



C. Foglamp selection ring.
The foglamps operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

rear foglamps

They operates with the dipped beam headlamps and main beam headlamps.

- To switch on the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** forwards.
- To switch off the rear foglamps, turn the ring **C** rearwards.

When automatic illumination of headlamps is on (with AUTO model), the dipped beam headlamps and sidelamps remain on while the rear foglamps are on.

front and rear foglamps

Rotate and release the ring **C**:

- forwards a first time to switch on the front foglamps,
- forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps,
- rearwards a first time to switch off the rear foglamps,
- rearwards a second time to switch of the front fog lamps.

When the headlamps switch off with automatic illumination of headlamps (AUTO model) or when the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, you should switch on the foglamps and dipped beam headlamps manually, as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Do not forget to switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Switching off the lighting when switching off the ignition

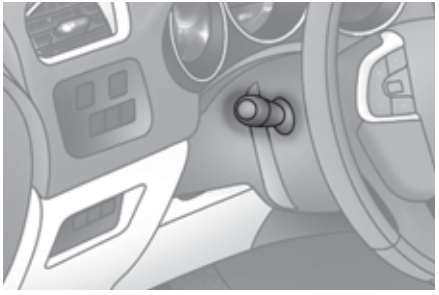
When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps switch off immediately, except for the dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

Switching on the lighting when switching on the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control stalk, turn the ring **A** to position **"0"** - lighting off, then to the position of your choice.
When the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns you that the vehicle's lighting is on.
They switch off automatically after a period which depends on the state of charge of the battery (entry to energy economy mode).

Manual guide-me-home lighting

The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.



Switching on

- With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting stalk.
- A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me-home lighting switches off automatically after a set time.

Parking lamps

Side markers for the vehicle by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



- Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example: when parking on the left; lighting control stalk upwards; the right hand sidelamps are on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator warning lamp in the instrument panel.
To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

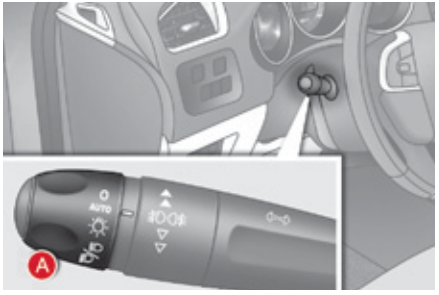
Daytime running lamps



Daytime lighting which comes on automatically when the engine is started making the vehicle more visible to other users.
This function is assured by dedicated lamps.

Automatic illumination of headlamps

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, when a low level of external light is detected or in certain cases of activation of the windscreen wipers.
As soon as the brightness returns to an adequate level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, these lamps are switched off automatically and the daytime running lamps come on.



Activation

☞ Turn ring **A** to the **"AUTO"** position. The activation of the function is confirmed by the display of a message.

Deactivation

☞ Turn ring **A** to a position other than **"AUTO"**. The deactivation of the function is confirmed by the display of a message.

Operating fault

SERVICE

In the event of a fault with the sunshine sensor, the lighting come on, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN or a qualified workshop workshop.

! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Therefore, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, coupled with the rain sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

Automatic guide-me-home lighting

When the automatic illumination of headlamps functions is activated, if the ambient light level is low the dipped beam headlamps remain on when switching off the ignition.

Settings

Activation and deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting can be set in the vehicle configuration menu.

Welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your access to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated depending on the ambient light level detected by the sunshine sensor.



Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps, as well as the side spotlamps, located under the door mirrors, come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

Switching off

The welcome lighting switches off automatically after a programmed time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming

Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the lighting duration for the welcome lighting can be set via the vehicle configuration menu.

Direction indicators



- Left: lower the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting stalk passing the point of resistance.

If you forget to cancel the direction indicators for more than twenty seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 40 mph (60 km/h).

Three flashes of the direction indicators

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

On versions fitted with LED direction indicators, the line of LEDs is illuminated sequentially. The brightness of the daytime runnning lamps is reduced during sequential operation of the direction indicators.

Headlamp beam height adjustment

Manual adjustment of halogen headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamp beams should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0. 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
-. 3 people.
1. 5 people.
-. Intermediate setting.
2. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
-. Intermediate setting.
3. Driver + maximum authorised load.

The initial setting is position **"0"**.

Automatic adjustment of xenon headlamps



This system adjusts the height of the xenon headlamp beams automatically and when stationary, according to the load in the vehicle, so as to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users.

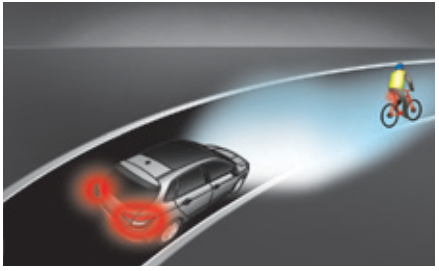
SERVICE If a malfunction occurs, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.
The system then places your headlamps in the lowest position.

Do not touch the xenon bulbs. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

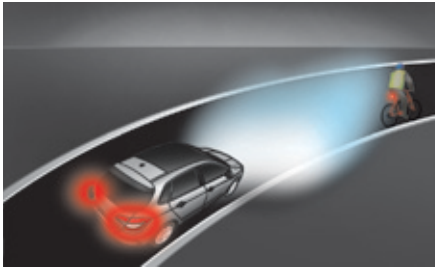
Directional lighting



When the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, this function, allows the light beams to better follow the road.
The use of this function, coupled with the xenon headlamps and the cornering lighting, considerably improves the quality of your lighting round bends.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

This function is inactive:
- when stationary or at low speeds,
- when reverse is engaged.

Programming



The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.

The system is activated by default.
The state of the system stays in memory on switching off the ignition.

Operating fault



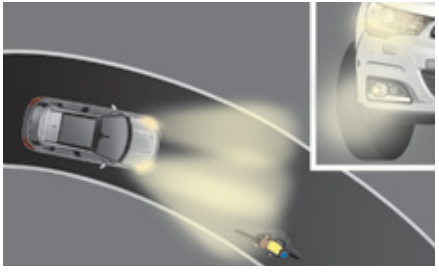
If a fault occurs, this warning lamp flashes in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

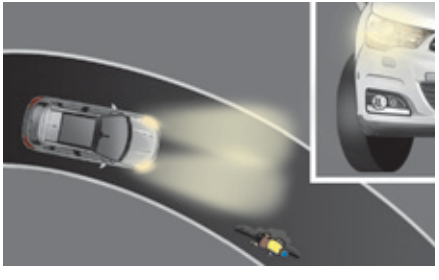
Cornering lighting



With dipped or main beams, this function makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (approximately 40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, intersections, parking manoeuvres...).



with cornering lighting



without cornering lighting

Switching on

The system operates:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
  or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

Programming



The system is activated or deactivated in the vehicle configuration menu.
The system is activated by default.

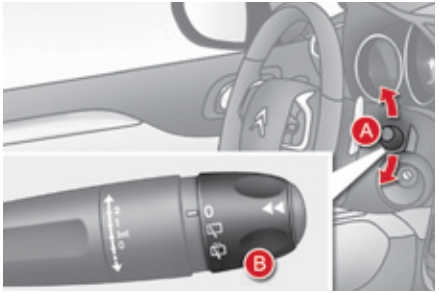
Wiper controls

System for selection and control of the various front and rear wiping modes for the elimination of rain and cleaning the screens.
The vehicle's front and rear wipers are designed to improve the driver's visibility according to the climatic conditions.
The wipers are controlled by means of stalk **A** for the front and the ring **B** for the rear.

Programming

Various automatic wiper control modes are also available depending on whether the following options are fitted:
- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

Model without AUTO wiping



Model with AUTO wiping



Windscreen wiper

A. Wiping speed control stalk: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

2	Fast wiping (heavy rain).
1	Normal wiping (moderate rain).
Int	Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).
0	Park.
↓	Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).
	or
AUTO ↓	Automatic wiping (press down, then release).

Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

4

Automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically, without any action on the part of the driver, if rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rainfall.



Switching on



Briefly push stalk **A** downwards.

The instruction is confirmed by a wiping cycle, accompanied by illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel and an activation message.

Switching off



Briefly push stalk **A** downwards again.

The instruction is confirmed by this warning lamp going off in the instrument panel and/or the display of a deactivation message.

The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If an automatic rain sensitive wiper malfunction occurs, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not cover the rain sensor, linked with the sunshine sensor and located in the centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

Windscreen and headlamp wash

☞ Pull the windscreen wiper stalk towards you. The windscreen wash then the windscreen wipers operate for a fixed period.

The headlamp washers only operate when **the dipped or main beam headlamps are on, with the vehicle moving**.

i To reduce the consumption of the fluid by the headlamp washers, they operate only with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

Low screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

On vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, the low level of this fluid is indicated by gauge in the reservoir filler neck under the bonnet.
Checking and topping up this fluid can should be done with the engine off.
The level of this fluid should be checked regularly, particularly during winter.
For more information on checking the screenwash / headlamp wash level, refer to the corresponding section.

Special position of the windscreen wipers



This position permits release of the windscreen wiper blades.
It is used for cleaning or replacement of the blades. It can also be useful, in winter, to detach the blades from the windscreen.

☞ Any action on the wiper stalk in the minute after switching off the ignition places the blades vertically on the screen.
☞ To park the blades again, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

4

Rear wiper



! If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a tailgate bicycle carrier, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle configuration menu.

B. Rear wiper selection ring: turn the ring to place the desired symbol against the marking.

Park.

Intermittent wipe.

Wash-wipe.

Turn the ring to its stop/the rear screen wash, then the rear wiper operates for a set duration.

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Programming

The function is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
This function is activated by default.

Hazard warning lamps



Visual warning by means of the direction indicators to alert other road users to a vehicle breakdown, towing or accident.

☞ Press this button, the direction indicators flash.

They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically the first time you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Horn



Audible warning system to alert other road users to an imminent danger.

☞ Press the central part of the multifunction steering wheel.

i Use the horn moderately and only in situations allowed by the motoring regulations in the country you are driving in.

Emergency or assistance call



This system allows you to make an emergency or assistance call to the emergency services or to the dedicated CITROËN service.

For more information on the use of this function, refer to the "Audio and telematics" section.

5

Braking assistance systems

Group of supplementary systems which help you to obtain optimum braking in complete safety in emergency situations:
- anti-lock braking system (ABS),
- electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA).

Anti-lock braking system and electronic brake force distribution

Linked systems which improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking, in particular on poor or slippery surfaces.

Activation

The anti-lock braking system comes into operation automatically when there is a risk of wheel lock.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

! When braking in an emergency, press very firmly without releasing the pressure.

Operating fault



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the anti-lock braking system which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.



If this warning lamp comes on, together with the **STOP** and **ABS** warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, it indicates a malfunction of the electronic brake force distribution which could result in loss of control of the vehicle when braking.

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In either case, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i When replacing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that they conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Emergency braking assistance

System which, in an emergency, enables you to obtain the optimum braking pressure more quickly, thus reducing the stopping distance.

Activation

It is triggered by the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed.
The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

! When braking in an emergency, press firmly without releasing the pressure.

Trajectory control systems

Anti-slip regulation (ASR) and dynamic stability control (DSC)

The anti-slip regulation (also known as traction control) optimises traction to prevent skidding of the wheels, by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine.
The electronic stability control acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to keep the vehicle on the trajectory required by the driver, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Intelligent traction control system ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.
This system detects situations of difficult surface adhesion that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel slip to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

> The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of adhesion.

Activation

These systems are activated automatically each time the vehicle is started.
They come into operation in the event of a grip or trajectory problem.

This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.



Deactivation

In extremely severe conditions (deep snow, mud, ...), if you are unable to move off, it may be useful to temporarily deactivate these systems so that the wheels can spin freely and allow the vehicle to move.

☞ Press this button, located near the steering wheel.

If the indicator lamp in the button comes on, this indicates that these systems are deactivated.

It is recommended that the systems be reactivated as soon as possible.

Reactivation

These systems are reactivated automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 30 mph (50 km/h).

☞ Press this button again to reactivate them manually.



Operating fault

The illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and in this button, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, indicates a fault with these systems.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The trajectory control systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but this should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.
The correct functioning of these systems is assured provided that manufacturer's recommendations are observed on:

- wheels (tyres and rims),
- braking components,
- electronic components,
- assembly and repair procedures.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

The front seat belts are fitted with a pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, so improving their protection.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Height adjustment



- ☞ To lower the attachment point, squeeze the control **A** and slide it downwards.
- ☞ To raise the attachment point, slide the control **A** upwards.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel if the driver and/or the front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the driver and/or the front passenger fastens their seat belt.

Seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamps display



1. Driver's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.
2. Front passenger's seat belt not fastened / unfastened warning lamp.

The corresponding warning lamp **1** or **2** comes on in red on the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if the seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

Rear seat belts



The rear seats are each fitted with a three-point seat belt, with force limiter and, for the outer seats, an effort limiter.

Fastening

- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ☞ On the outer seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

Seat belt unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when one or more rear passengers unfasten their seat belt.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), this warning lamp flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal of increasing volume. Once these two minutes have elapsed, this warning lamp remains on until the one or more rear passengers fasten their seat belt.



Seat belt unfastened warning lamps display

3. Right hand rear seat belt warning lamp.
4. Centre rear seat belt warning lamp.
5. Left hand rear seat belt warning lamp.

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or when the vehicle is moving at less than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red for approximately 30 seconds, if the seat belt is not fastened.
When the vehicle is moving at more than 12 mph (20 km/h), the corresponding warning lamps **3**, **4** and **5** come on in red, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen, if a rear passenger has unfastened their seat belt.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
The inertia reels are fitted with an automatic locking device which comes into operation in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:
- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not bear any trace of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one person.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on child seats, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pretensioning device may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

General information

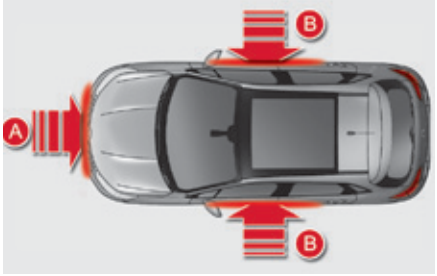
System designed to contribute towards improving the safety of the occupants (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).

If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain roll-over conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.



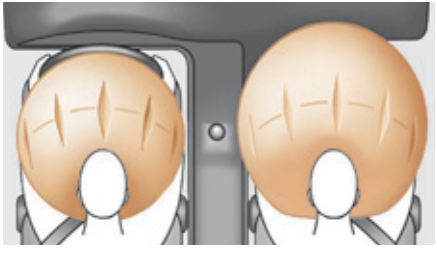
Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

i Deployment of one or more of the airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.

The noise of detonation related to the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

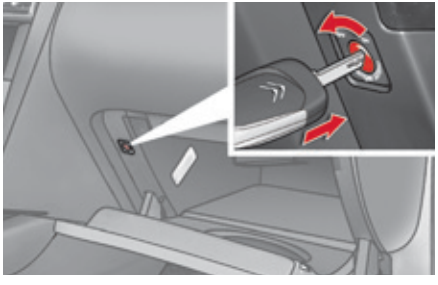
Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the passenger's front airbag if it is deactivated, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side to cushion their forward movement.



Deactivation

Only the passenger's front airbag can be deactivated:

- ☞ insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch,
- ☞ turn it to the **"OFF"** position,
- ☞ then, remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.

According to version, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display when the ignition is on and until the airbag is reactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the passenger's front airbag must be deactivated when you install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivation

When you remove the child seat, turn the switch to the **"ON"** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

With the ignition on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt and passenger's front airbag warning lamps display for approximately one minute, if the passenger's front airbag is activated.

Operating fault

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked. The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

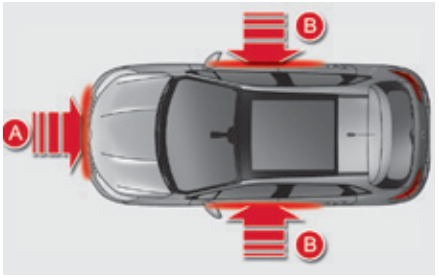
Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

A lateral airbag is deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.



Impact detection zones

A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

Curtain airbags

System which contributes towards improving the protection of the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Advice

For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below:

Sit in a normal upright position.
Wear a correctly adjusted seat belt.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object...), nor fix or attach anything close to the inflation trajectory of the airbags; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fit or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

Lateral airbags

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment the lateral airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, you can contact a CITROËN dealer.
For more information on accessories, refer to the corresponding section.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backs (clothing...). This could cause injury to the chest or arms if the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof. This could cause injury to the head if the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted on your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

General points relating to child seats

Although one of CITROËN main criteria when designing your vehicle, the safety of your children also depends on you.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- in accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings*,
- **statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats,**
- **a child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

CITROËN recommends that children should travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- **rearward facing** up to the age of 3,
- **forward facing** over the age of 3.

* The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

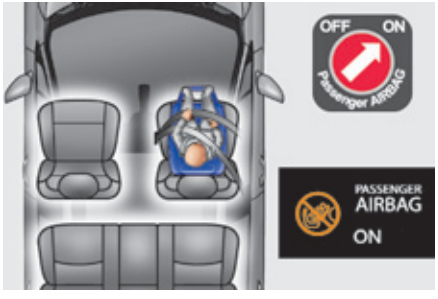
Child seat in the front*

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position, with the backrest straightened.
The passenger's front airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were to inflate**.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position with seat backrest straightened and leave the passenger's front airbag activated.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in stable contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the passenger seat.



Passenger seat adjusted to the intermediate longitudinal and highest position.

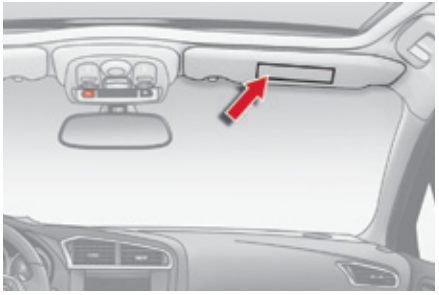
* Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing a child seat on this seat.

Deactivating the passenger's front airbag

! Never install a rearward facing child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.

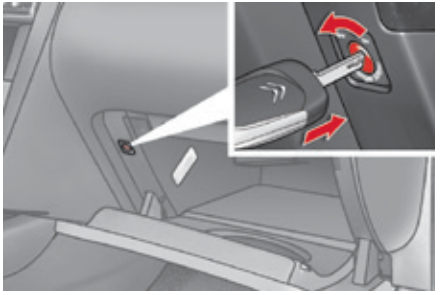
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger's sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, the following tables contain this warning in all of the languages required.







Passenger airbag OFF



i For information on deactivating the passenger's front airbag, refer to the "Airbags" section.

AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ.
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla.
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN.
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ.
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Child seat at the rear

Rearward facing



When a rearward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the rearward facing child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Forward facing



When a forward facing child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward facing child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

! Ensure that the seat belt is correctly tensioned.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that this is in firm contact with the floor. If necessary, adjust the front seat of the vehicle.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

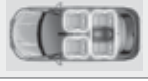
Child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg	
	**L1** "RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" Installed in the rearward facing position.
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg	
	**L4** "KLIPPAN Optima" From 22 kg (approximately 6 years), the booster is used on its own.
	**L5** "RÖMER KIDFIX" Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings. The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat	**Weight of the child /** indicative age			
	Less than 13 kg (groups 0 (b) and 0+) Up to ≈ 1 year	**From 9 to 18 kg** (group 1) From 1 to ≈ 3 years	**From 15 to 25 kg** (group 2) From 3 to ≈ 6 years	**From 22 to 36 kg** (group 3) From 6 to ≈ 10 years
Front passenger seat (c)				
- fixed 	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**	**U(R1)**
- height adjustable	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**	**U(R2)**
Outer rear seats (d) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat (d) 	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

U: seating position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved rearward facing and/or forward facing.

U(R1): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat backrest inclined fully forwards.

U(R2): identical to **U**, with the vehicle's seat adjusted to the highest position.

X: seating position not suitable for installing a child seat for the weight group indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat which can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Consult the legislation in force in your country before installing your child on this seat.

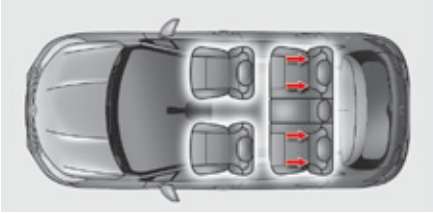
(d) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

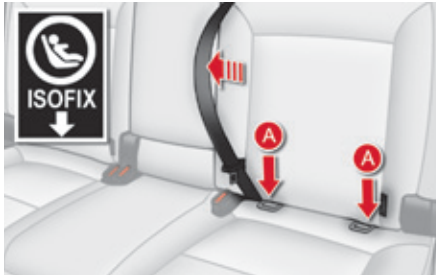
"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulation**.

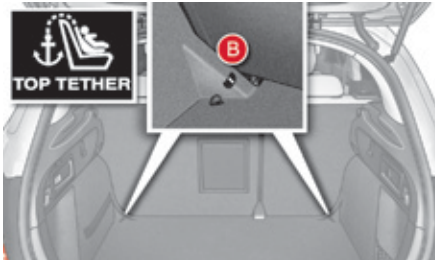
The seats, represented below, are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat back and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, behind the seat and identified by a marking, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are secured on the two rings **A**. Some seats also have an **upper strap**, which is attached to ring **B**.

i For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

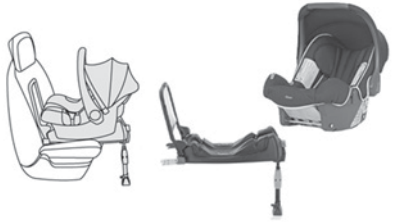
- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),
- raise the carpet cover on the TOP TETHER,
- pass the upper strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to the ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

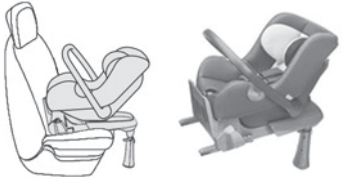
i When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left hand rear seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident. Follow strictly the fitting instructions provided by with the child seat.

ISOFIX child seats recommended by CITROËN

CITROËN offers a range of ISOFIX child seats listed and type approved for your vehicle.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus" and its ISOFIX base (size category: **E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
 Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt.

Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **C, D, E**)
Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg
 Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the anchorage rings **A**. The base has a support leg, adjustable for height, which sits on the vehicle's floor. This seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case only the seat shell is used.

Refer also to the child seat manufacturer's fitting instructions for information on installing and removing the seat.

"**RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX**" (size category **B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
 Installed only in the forward facing position. Attached to the rings **A**, as well as the ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap. Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying. This child seat can also be used on seats which are not fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three point seat belt.

Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)
Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg
 Installed rearward facing using an ISOFIX base which is attached to the rings **A**. The base includes a support leg, adjustable for height, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be used forward facing. This child seat **can not** be secured with a seat belt. We recommend that it be used rearward facing up to 3 years.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In accordance with European Regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on seats in the vehicle fitted with ISOFIX mountings.
In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Less than 10 kg (group 0) Up to approx. 6 months		**Less than 10 kg (group 0) Less than 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to approx. 1 year			**From 9 to 18 kg (group 1)** From approx. 1 to 3 years				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Infant car seat***		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
ISOFIX child seats universal and semi-universal which can be installed on the rear outer seats	**IL-SU****		**IL-SU**			**IL-SU**		**IUF IL-SU**		

IUF: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing" secured using the upper strap.
IL-SU: seat suitable for the installation of an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat either:
- rearward facing fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- forward facing fitted with a support leg,
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

For advice on securing of the upper strap, refer to the "ISOFIX mountings" section.

* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.
** The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured on the lower rings of a vehicle ISOFIX seat, occupies two rear seats.

! Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

! Advice

The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's protection in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a rearward facing child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted forward facing.

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, move its backrest into the upright position.

For optimum installation of the forward facing child seat, ensure that the back of the child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's seat, in contact if possible.
You mst remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest to a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.
Deactivate the passenger's front airbag when a rearward facing child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a booster seat

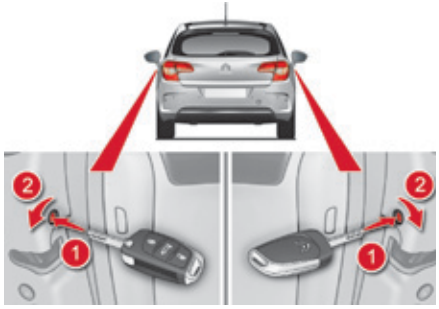
The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.
Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.
CITROËN recommends the use of a booster seat which has a back, fitted with a seat belt guide at shoulder level.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:
- a child or children alone and unsupervised in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.
Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.
To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

Manual child lock

Mechanical system to prevent opening of the rear door using its interior control.
The control, red in colour, is located on the edge of each rear door. It is identified by a symbol marked on the bodywork.

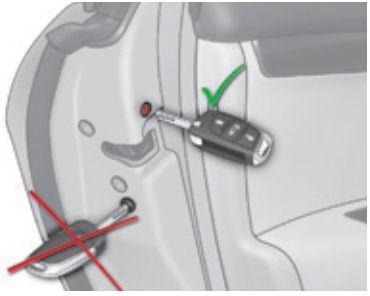


Locking

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the ignition key or the integral key, depending on version, turn the red control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.



! Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.

5

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
On a long journey, a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.

If you are obliged to drive through water:



- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start system,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as circumstances allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied - Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
Do not park or run the engine when stationary in areas where inflammable substances and materials (dry grass, dead leaves...) might come into contact with the hot exhaust system - Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

When towing

Distribution of loads

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance.
Above 1 000 metres, the maximum towed load must be reduced by 10 % for every 1 000 metres of altitude.

For more information on weights (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to side wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towed load on a long incline depends on the gradient and the ambient temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If the warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance.
To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the hadlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on adjusting the headlamp beam height, refer to the corresponding section.

The rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically if a genuine CITROËN towbar is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic engine immobiliser

The keys contain an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised for engine starting to be authorised.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

SERVICE In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and/or the display of a message, depending on version.

In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer as soon as possible.

i Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you on acquisition of the vehicle.

Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

Ignition switch



It has 3 positions:
- position **1 (Stop)**: insert and removing the key,
- position **2 (Ignition on)**: steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running,
- position **3 (Starting)**.

Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or portable devices to be charged. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

i Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction. It could adversely affect the deployment of the front airbag.

! Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied and the gearbox in neutral or position **N** or **P**:

- depress the clutch pedal fully (manual gearbox),
  or
- press the brake pedal firmly (automatic gearbox),
- insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code,
- unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering and the key.

In certain cases, you may have to apply more force to the steering (wheels on full lock, for example).

- With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

- With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few moments before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Danger of intoxication and death!
In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle, engine and gearbox, it is necessary to leave the engine running for 4 minutes before moving off.

Switching off the engine

- Stop the vehicle.
- With the engine running at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- To lock the steering column, turn the steering until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

- Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.

Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off: risk of loss of control of the vehicle.

When you leave the vehicle, keep the key with you and lock the vehicle.

Energy economy mode

After switching off the engine (position **1-Stop**), for a maximum of 30 minutes you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, ...

For more information on the energy economy mode, refer to the corresponding section.

Key left in the "Ignition on" position

If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting / Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

Starting the engine

It is not necessary to place the electronic key in the reader.



- Place the gear selector lever **P** or **N** with an automatic gearbox, or neutral with a manual gearbox.
- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the brake pedal for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully declutch for vehicles with a manual gearbox.

START STOP

- Briefly press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.
See the advice below for Diesel versions.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message appears in the instrument panel screen. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "**START/STOP**" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" electronic key in the recognition zone is essential.
As a safety measure, do not leave this zone with the vehicle running.

If the electronic key is not detected in the zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into the zone so that the engine can be started.

Diesel vehicles

In temperatures below zero the engine will not start until the preheater warning lamp has gone off.

If this warning lamp comes on after pressing "**START/STOP**", you should hold the brake or clutch pedal down until the warning lamp goes off and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again.

Switching off the engine

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** with an automatic gearbox, or neutral with a manual gearbox.

START STOP

- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

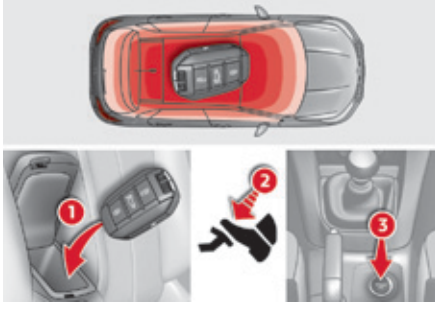
The engine stops and the steering column locks.

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Do not leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

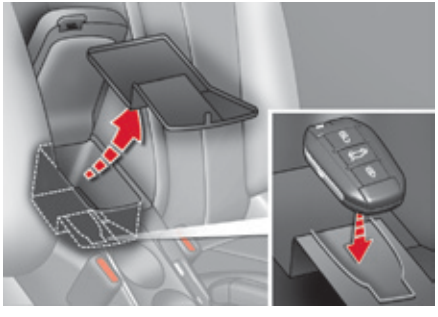
Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Emergency starting



When the electronic key is in the recognition zone and, after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, the engine does not start:

- Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.



- Open the front armrest.
- Raise the mat by its tab and remove it.
- Place the electronic key in the back-up reader.
- Press the brake pedal on vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully declutch with a manual gearbox.

START STOP

- Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine starts.

Emergency switch-off

START STOP

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched of without conditions. To do this, press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds.

In this case the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

Electronic key not recognised



If the electronic key is no longer in the recognition zone when driving or when you (later) request switching off the engine, a message is displayed.

START STOP

☞ Press and hold the "**START/STOP**" button for about 3 seconds if you want to force switching off the engine (**note that restarting will not be possible without the key**).

Ignition on position (without starting)

With the Keyless Entry and Starting key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

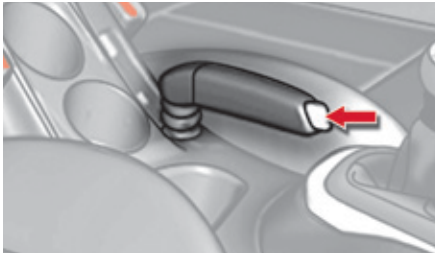
START STOP

☞ Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.

☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and so allow the vehicle to be locked.

i With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode when required to maintain the state of charge of the battery.

Manual parking brake



Applying

☞ Pull the parking brake lever fully up to immobilise your vehicle.

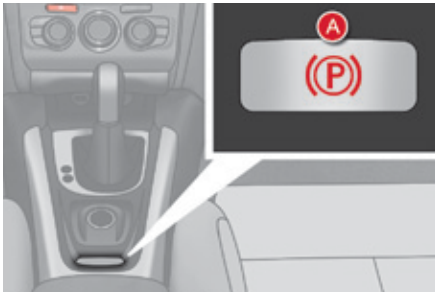
Releasing

☞ Pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, if this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the multifunction screen, this indicates that the parking brake is still on or has not been properly released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

Electric parking brake



The electric parking brake has two operating modes:

- **Automatic application / release**
  Application is automatic when the engine stops, release is automatic on use of the accelerator (activated by default),
- **Manual application / release**
  The parking brake can be applied / released manually by pulling control lever **A**.

AUTO P OFF

If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, the automatic mode is deactivated.

Programming the mode

Depending on the country of sale of the vehicle, the automatic application when the engine is switched off and the automatic release when you press the accelerator can be deactivated.

GB I

Activation / deactivation is done using the vehicle configuration menu; refer to the section covering the configuration of your vehicle's systems.

The parking brake is then applied and released manually. When the driver's door is opened, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed if the parking brake is not applied.

! It is recommended that you do not apply the parking brake in very cold conditions (ice) and during towing (breakdown, caravan...). Deactivate the automatic functions and release the parking brake manually.

i Do not place any object (packet of cigarettes, telephone...) between the gear lever and the electric parking brake control lever.

Manual application

With the vehicle stationary, to apply the parking brake whether the engine is running or off, **pull** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,

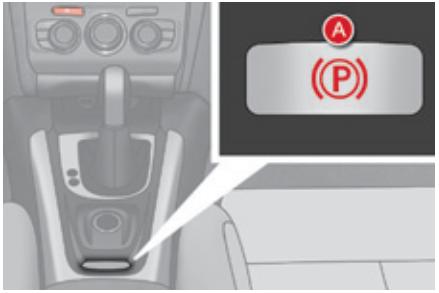


- display of the message "Parking brake on".

When the driver's door is opened with the engine running, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal if the parking brake has not been applied, except in the case of an automatic gearbox with the gear selector in position **P**.

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

Manual release



With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake, **press** on the **brake pedal** or the accelerator, **pull then release** control **A**.

The full application of the parking brake is confirmed by:



- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Parking brake off".



If you pull control lever **A** without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a warning lamp will come on in the instrument panel.

Maximum application

If necessary, you can make a **maximum application** of the parking brake. This is obtained by means of a **long pull** on the control lever **A**, until you see the message "Parking brake on maximum" and a beep is heard.

Maximum application is essential:

- in the case of a vehicle towing a caravan or a trailer, if the automatic functions are activated but you are applying the parking brake manually,
- when the gradient you are parked on may vary (e.g. on a ferry, on a lorry, during towing).

In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, make a maximum application of the parking brake then turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.
After a maximum application, the release time will be longer.

Automatic application, engine off

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and of the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed (not flashing).
Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

i In the case of towing, a loaded vehicle or parking on a gradient, turn the front wheels towards the pavement and engage a gear when you park.

Automatic release

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively** when you press the accelerator:

- ☞ **Manual gearbox:** press down fully on the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse, press on the accelerator pedal and move off.
- ☞ **Automatic gearbox**: select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.

Full release of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A** going off,



- display of the message "Parking brake off".

! When stationary, with the engine running, do not press the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, as you may release the parking brake.

Immobilising the vehicle, engine running

With the engine running and the vehicle stationary, in order to immobilise the vehicle it is essential to **manually** apply the parking brake by **pulling** control lever **A**.

The application of the parking brake is confirmed by:

- illumination of the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the control lever **A**,



- display of the message "Parking brake on".

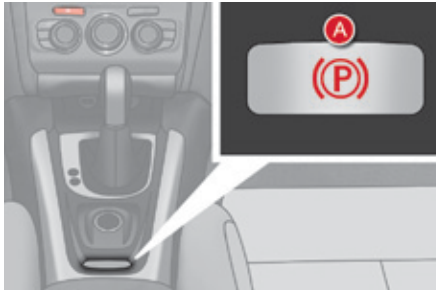
When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal, if the parking brake has not been applied, except in the case of an automatic gearbox with the gear selector in position **P**.

! Before leaving the vehicle, ensure that parking brake warning lamp in the instrument panel is on fixed, not flashing.

Particular situations

In certain situations (e.g. starting the engine), the parking brake can automatically alter its force. This is normal operation.
To advance your vehicle a few centimetres without starting the engine, but with the ignition on, press on the brake pedal and release the parking brake **by pulling** then **releasing** the control lever **A**. The full release of the parking brake is confirmed by the warning lamps in the control lever **A** and in the instrument panel going off and display of the message "Parking brake off".

Emergency braking



In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc) a continuous pull on the control lever **A** will stop the vehicle.
The electronic stability control provides stability during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake faulty" will be displayed.

In the event of failure of the electronic stability control system, signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, braking stability is then not guaranteed.
In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever **A**.

! The emergency braking must only be used in exceptional circumstances.

Operating faults

If the electric parking brake malfunction warning lamp comes on together with one or more of the warning lamps presented in these tables, place the vehicle in a safe condition (on level ground, gear engaged) and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Situations	Consequences
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available. - The electric parking brake can only be used manually.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- Manual release of the electric parking brake is only available by pressing the accelerator pedal and releasing the control. - Hill start assist is not available. - The automatic functions and the manual application are still available.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps: 	- The automatic functions are deactivated. - Hill start assist is not available.

Situations	Consequences
and possibly  flashing	To apply the electric parking brake: ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition. ☞ pull the control for at least 5 seconds or until application is complete. ☞ switch on the ignition and check the switching on of the electric parking brake warning lamps. The application is slower than during normal operation. To release the electric parking brake: ☞ switch on the ignition. ☞ pull the control and hold it for approximately 3 seconds then release it. If the braking warning lamp is flashing or if the warning lamps do not come on with the ignition on, these procedures will not work. Place the vehicle on level ground and have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Display of the message "**Parking brake fault**" and of the following warning lamps:  and possibly  flashing	- Only the automatic application on switching off the engine and automatic release on acceleration functions are available. - The manual application/release of the electric parking brake and the emergency braking are not available.
Battery fault: 	- If the battery warning lamp comes on you must stop immediately as soon as the traffic allows. Stop and immobilise your vehicle (if necessary, place the two chocks under the wheels). - Apply the electric parking brake before switching off the engine.

6-speed manual gearbox

Engaging 5th or 6th gear

☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to observe this procedure may cause permanent damage to the gearbox (engaging 3rd or 4th gear by mistake).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

Automatic gearbox

Six speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, and the pleasure of manual gear changing.
Two driving modes are offered:

- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox, with a **sport** programme for a more dynamic style of driving and a **snow** programme to improve driving when traction is poor,
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selection gate



1. Gear selector.
2. Button "❄" **(snow)**.
3. Button "**S**" **(sport)**.
4. Position markings for the gear selector.

Gear selector positions



P. Park.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on or off.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake on.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M.+ / - Manual operation with sequential changing of the six gears.

☞ Push forwards to change up through the gears.
or
☞ Pull backwards to change down through the gears.

Displays in the instrument panel



When you move the selector in the gate to select a position, the corresponding indicator comes on in the instrument panel.

P Park
R Reverse
N Neutral
D Drive (automatic driving)
S **Sport** programme
❄ **Snow** programme
1 to 6 Gear engaged during manual operation
- Invalid value during manual operation

Moving off

☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.

If this procedure is not followed, an audible signal is heard, accompanied by a message in the instrument panel screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.



If you do not press the brake pedal when trying to move the gear selector out of position **P**, this warning lamp or this symbol appears in the instrument panel accompanied by a message, flashing of the **P** symbol, the display of a message and an audible signal.

☞ Check that the display in the instrument panel agrees with the position engaged.
☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The parking brake is released manually, the vehicle moves off.
If the parking brake is on and automatic mode is activated, accelerate progressively.

i If the parking brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are fully closed.

i If position **N** is engaged inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle then engage position **D** to accelerate.

! When the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, if position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator pedal down fully (kick down). The gearbox changes down automatically or maintains the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
On braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

! Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select positions **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

Sport and snow programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in very specific conditions of use.

Sport programme "S"

☞ Press button **"S"**, after starting the engine.
The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.



S appears in the instrument panel.

Snow programme "❄"

☞ Press button "❄", after starting the engine.
The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.
This programme improves starting and drive when traction is poor.



❄ appears in the instrument panel.

Return to auto-adaptive mode

☞ At any time, press the button selected again to leave the special programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation

- ☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
- ☞ Push the selector towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the selector towards the **-** sign to change down a gear.

It is only possible to change from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit; otherwise, the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **1** automatically.
It is not necessary to release the accelerator when changing gear.
It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
The sport and snow programmes do not operate in manual mode.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, put the selector in position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.
In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, there is an audible signal and a message appears.

- ☞ Return the selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

SERVICE When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial knock when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 60 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! You risk damaging the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

To reduce fuel consumption when stationary for long periods with the engine running (traffic jam...), position the gear selector at **N** and apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode.

Gear shift indicator*

System which reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
The gear engagement recommendations must not be considered compulsory. In fact, the configuration of the road, the amount of traffic and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the advice given by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

On vehicle fitted with a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended.

With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

Example:

- You are in third gear.
- You press the accelerator pedal.
- The system may suggest that you engage a higher gear.



i On BlueHDi Diesel 150 versions with manual gearbox, the system may suggest changing into neutral so that the engine can go into standby (STOP mode with Stop & Start), in certain driving conditions. In this case, **N** is displayed in the instrument panel.

i The system adapts its gear change recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, ...) and the demands of the driver (power, acceleration, braking, ...).
The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

* Depending on engine.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other...). The engine restarts automatically - START mode - as soon as you want to move off. The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or vehicle stationary with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi 115 and 120 Diesel versions, when you put the gear lever into neutral and release the clutch pedal,

- **with an automatic gearbox,** vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector in position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with the system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets itself to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

STOP mode does not affect the functionality of the vehicle, such as braking, power steering, for example.

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Special cases: STOP mode unavailable

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the vehicle is on a steep slope (up or down),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (using the key or the "START/STOP" button),
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case, the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

The **"ECO"** warning lamp goes off and the engine starts automatically:

- **with a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal,
- **with an automatic gearbox:**
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

With a manual gearbox in STOP mode, if a gear is engaged without fully depressing the clutch pedal, a warning lamp comes on or an alert message is displayed asking you to depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Special cases: START invoked automatically

For safety reasons or to ensure smooth operation, START mode is invoked automatically when:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 15 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (3 km/h (2 mph) with PureTech 130 petrol and BlueHDi Diesel 115 and 120 versions) or 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, ambient temperature...) where the engine is needed to assure control of a system.

In this case the **"ECO"** warning lamp flashes for few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation



At any time, press the **"ECO OFF"** switch to deactivate the system.
This is confirmed by the switch warning lamp coming on accompanied by the display of a message.

If the system has been deactivated in STOP mode, the engine restarts immediately.

Reactivation

Press the **"ECO OFF"** switch again.
The system is active again; this is confirmed by the switch warning lamp going off and the display of a message.

The system is reactivated automatically at every new start using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Operating fault



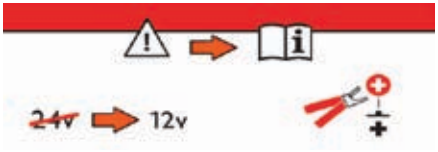
In the event of a malfunction with the system, the **"ECO OFF"** switch warning lamp flashes, then comes on continuously.
have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

In the event of a fault in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall. All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.
Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed asking you to put the gear lever into position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal.
It is then necessary to switch off the ignition, then restart the engine using the key or the "START/STOP" button.

Maintenance

Before doing any work under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

This system requires the use of a 12 V battery of specific technology and characteristics (reference numbers available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop).
Fitting a battery not listed by CITROËN would introduces the risk of faults with the system.



The Stop & Start system makes use of an advanced technology. All work on this type of battery must only be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

This function is only active when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- when certain conditions of gradient are met,
- with the driver's door closed.

The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, apply the parking brake manually then ensure that the parking brake warning lamp is on (not flashing) in the instrument panel.

Operation



On an ascending slope, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal:
- if you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox,
- if you are in position **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.

On a descending slope, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a brief moment when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault



If a fault occurs with the system, these warning lamps come on. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Tyre under-inflation detection



System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.
The system continuously monitors the pressures of the four tyres, as soon as the vehicle is moving.
A pressure sensor is located in the valve of each tyre (except the spare wheel).
The system triggers an alert if a drop in pressure is detected in one or more tyres.

The tyre under-inflation detection system is an aid to driving which does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

! This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures regularly (including the spare wheel) and before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres adversely affects road holding, extends braking distances and causes premature tyre wear, particularly under arduous conditions (vehicle loaded, high speed, long journey).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressures for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres cold (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after driving for less then 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speed).
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the values indicated on the label.
For more information on identification markings, including the tyre pressure label, refer to the corresponding section.

Under-inflation alert

The alert is given by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal, and depending on equipment, the display of a message.





In the event of a problem on one of the tyres, the symbol or the message appears, according to equipment, to identify it.

- ☞ Reduce speed, avoid sudden steering movements or harsh brake applications.
- ☞ Stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
- ☞ If you have a compressor (the one in the temporary puncture repair kit for example), check the four tyre pressures when cold. If it is not possible to check the tyre pressures at the time, drive carefully at reduced speed.
  or
- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (according to equipment).

i The alert is maintained until the tyre or tyres concerned is reinflated, repaired or replaced.
The spare wheel (space-saver type or a steel rim) does not have a sensor.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always lead to visible deformation of the tyre.
Do not rely on just a visual check.

Operating fault

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by the illumination of the service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

i This alert is also displayed when one or more wheels is not fitted with a sensor (for example, a space-saver or steel spare wheel).

In this case, monitoring of the tyre pressures is not assured.

Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked or, following the repair of a puncture, to have the original wheel, equipped with a sensor, refitted.

Any tyre repair or replacement on a wheel fitted with this system must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If after changing a tyre, a wheel is not detected by your vehicle (fitting snow tyres for example), you must have the system reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Lane departure warning system



System which detects the involuntary crossing of longitudinal traffic lane markings on the ground (solid or broken line).
Sensors, fitted below the front bumper, trigger a warning if the vehicle drifts over a lane marking (speed higher than 50 mph (80 km/h)).
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.

! The lane departure warning system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
It is necessary to observe driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Activation

☞ When switching the ignition on or with the engine running, press this button; the indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation

☞ Press this button again, the indicator lamp goes off.

The status of the system remains in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Detection

You are warned by the vibration of the driver's seat cushion:
- on the right-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the right,
- on the left-hand side, if the marking on the ground has been crossed on the left.

No warning is transmitted while the direction indicator is active and for approximately 20 seconds after the direction indicator is switched off.
A warning may be transmitted if a direction marking (e.g. arrow) or non-standard marking (e.g. graffiti) is crossed.

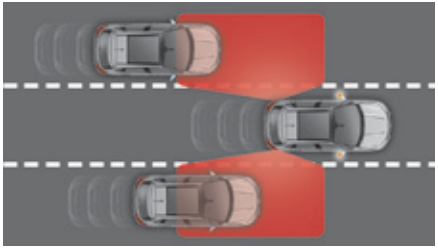
Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction, the service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The detection may be impeded:
- if the sensors are dirty (mud, snow...),
- if the markings on the ground are worn,
- if there is little contrast between the markings on the ground and the road surface.

Blind spot sensors



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane.
The blind spot sensor system can never replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

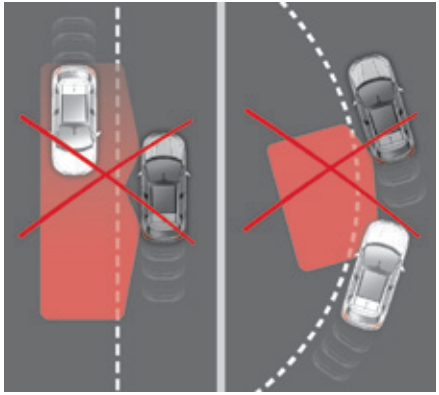
Operation



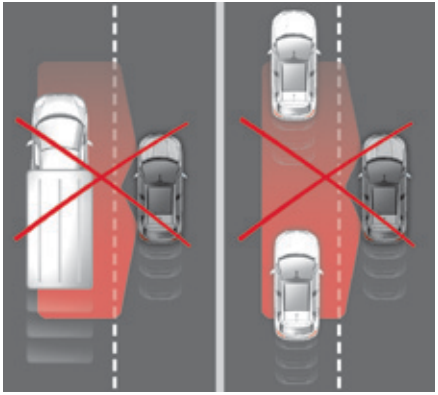
☞ On switching on the ignition, or engine running, press this button to activate the function; the warning lamp comes on.

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle - car, lorry, cycle - is detected.
For this, the following conditions must be met:
- all the vehicles must be moving in the same direction,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 75 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- when you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 15 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic must be flowing normally,
- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan...



No alert will be given in the following situations:
- in the presence of immobile objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs...),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a sinuous road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking (or being overtaken by) a very long vehicle (lorry, coach...) which is at the same time detected at the rear in the blind spot angle and present in the driver's forward field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

Operating fault



☞ To deactivate the system, press this button again; the warning lamp goes off.

The state of the system remains in memory on switching off the ignition.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towbar approved by CITROËN.

In the event of a fault, the warning lamp in the button flashes then goes off.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail...).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

Speed limiter

System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum programmed speed is 20 mph (30 km/h).
The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Steering mounted controls



1. Speed limiter mode selection wheel.
2. Programmed value decrease button.
3. Programmed value increase button.
4. Speed limiter on / pause button.
5. Display memorised speed settings button.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on / pause indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selection indication.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Selection of a memorised speed setting.

Switching on



☞ Turn the wheel **1** to the **"LIMIT"** position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.



☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system) press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.



☞ Pressing button **4** temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from your Audio system (only with the monochrome screen C):

☞ with the system first activated.

For more information on memorising speeds, refer to the corresponding section.

☞ make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new limit speed.

☞ to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen tablet:

☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.



! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

When the limit speed is exceeded but is not due to action by the driver, there is an audible signal to complete the alert.

Once the speed of the vehicle returns to the programmed setting, the speed limiter functions again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



Switching off

☞ Turn wheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- do not fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

System which automatically maintains the cruising speed of the vehicle at a setting programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h) as well as:
- with a manual gearbox, the engagement of fourth gear or higher,
- with an automatic gearbox, the gear selector at position **D** or second gear or higher in manual mode.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):
- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake or clutch pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

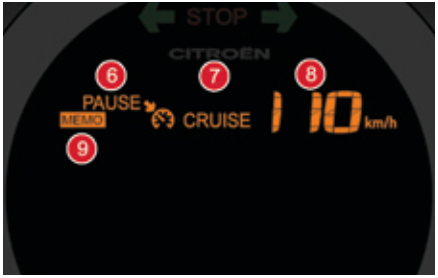
Steering mounted controls



1. Cruise control mode selection wheel.
2. Button for setting the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or lowering the cruise setting.
3. Button for setting the current speed of the vehicle as the cruise setting or raising the cruise setting.
4. Cruise control pause / resume button.
5. Display memorised speed settings button.

The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause / resume indication.
7. Cruise control mode selected indication.
8. Cruise speed setting.
9. Selecting a memorised cruise speed.

As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

Switching on



☞ Turn the wheel **1** to the **"CRUISE"** position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.



☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.
You can release the accelerator pedal.



☞ Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).



☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Adjusting the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be activated.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from your Audio system (only with the monochrome screen C):

☞ with the system first activated.

For more information on memorising speeds, refer to the corresponding section.

☞ make a long press on button **2** or **3**, the system displays the memorised speed closest to the actual speed of the vehicle; this setting becomes the new cruise speed.

☞ to choose another memorised speed, make another long press on button **2** or **3**.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen tablet:

☞ press button **5** to display the six memorised speed settings,

☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

☞ in steps of + or - 1 mph (km/h), make repeated short presses on button **2** or **3**,

☞ continuously, in steps of + or - 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

When required (overtaking manoeuvre...), it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.



To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.
Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes steady again.



! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused.
To activate the system again, press button **4**.

Switching off

☞ Turn wheel **1** to the **"0"** position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Operating fault

Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the cruise control system.
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



! Only use the cruise control if the traffic conditions will allow you to drive for a certain time at a steady speed and at a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, or in conditions of poor visibility (heavy rain, fog, falling snow...).
In some circumstances, it may not be possible to maintain or reach the programmed speed: towing, vehicle heavily loaded, steep climb.

! The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Memorising speeds

This function allows speed settings to be registered which will then be offered as settings for two systems: the speed limiter (a maximum speed) and the cruise control (cruising speed).
You can memorise up to six speed settings in the system, depending on version. By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

With your Audio system



Activating the function
Modifying a speed setting

- Go to the main menu by pressing the **"MENU"** button.
- Select the"Personalisation-configuration" menu and confirm.
- Select "Vehicle parameters" menu and confirm.
- Select the "Driving assistance" line and conform.
- Select "Speeds memorised" line and confirm.
- Select "Activation" to activate the function.
- Select the speed setting to be modified and confirm.
- Modify the speed setting.
- Select "**OK**" and confirm to save the modifications.

! As a safety measure, the driver must only modify a speed setting when stationary.



"MEM" button

- Press this button to display the list of memorised speed settings.

With the touch screen tablet

Modifying a speed setting

☞ Press this button to select the "**Driving**" menu.

☞ In the secondary page, press "**Speed settings**".

☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings:

- speed limiter

or

- cruise control.

☞ Choose the speed setting to be modified.



☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.

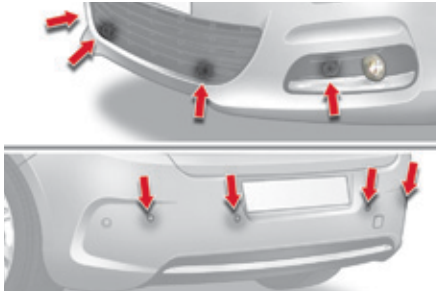
☞ Confirm to save the modification and quit the menu.



"MEM" button

Press this button to select a speed settings for use by the speed limiter or cruise control. Refer to the corresponding section.

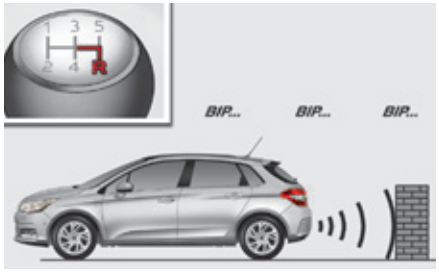
Parking sensors



This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (person, vehicle, tree, gate, etc.) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (stake, roadworks cone, etc.) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors



The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.
When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.





Visual assistance

This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars in the screen which move progressively nearer to the vehicle.
When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed in the screen.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

Deactivation/Activation of the front and rear parking sensors



The function is deactivated by pressing this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

i The function will be deactivated automatically if a trailer is being towed or a bicycle carrier is fitted (vehicle fitted with a towbar or bicycle carrier recommended by CITROËN).

Operating fault

SERVICE In the event of a malfunction of the system, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel and/or a message appears in the screen, accompanied by an audible signal (short beep).
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

TOTAL & CITROËN

Partners in performance and protecting the environment

Innovation in the search for performance

For over 40 year, the TOTAL Research and Development departments have developed lubricants for CITROËN, to match the latest technical innovations on CITROËN vehicles, both for competition and for everyday motoring.
For you, this is an assurance that you will obtain the best performance from your engine.

Optimum protection for your engine

By having your CITROËN vehicle serviced with TOTAL lubricants, you are contributing towards improving the life and performance of your engine, while also protecting the environment.





CITROËN

CITROËN prefers TOTAL

TOTAL

Fuel

Capacity of the tank: approximately 60 litres.

Low fuel level

When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and the display of an alert message. When it first comes on, **around 6 litres** of fuel remain in the tank.
Until sufficient fuel has been added, every time the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp appears, accompanied by an audible signal and an alert message. When driving, this audible signal and alert message are repeated with increasing frequency, as the level drops towards **0**.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.
If you run out of fuel (Diesel), refer to the corresponding section.

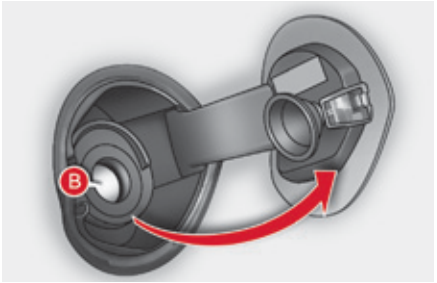
! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the system in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the key, or the START/STOP button if your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting.

Refuelling

Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may result in an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.



- ☞ Press control **A** until the automatic opening of the fuel flap is heard.
  This control remains active for a few minutes after switching off the ignition. If necessary, switch the ignition on again to reactivate it.
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel for your vehicle.



- ☞ Introduce the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap **B**.
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).
- ☞ Maintain this position while refuelling.
- ☞ Push the fuel flap to close it.

If you are filling your tank to the top, do not persist after the third cut-off; this could cause your vehicle to malfunction.

The petrol or Diesel engine of your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

For petrol engines, the use of unleaded fuel is compulsory.

The filler neck is narrower, admitting unleaded petrol nozzles only.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.

Fuel supply cut-off

Your vehicle is equipped with a safety device which cuts off the fuel supply in the event of a collision.

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with E10 bio-petrol (containing 10 % ethanol), conforming to European standards EN 228 and EN 15376.

E85 type fuels (containing up to 85 % ethanol) are reserved exclusively for vehicles marketed for the use of this type of fuel (BioFlex vehicles). The quality of the ethanol must comply with European standard EN 15293.



Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels which conform to current and future European standards (Diesel fuel which complies with standard EN 590 mixed with a biofuel which complies with standard EN 14214) available at the pumps (containing up to 7 % Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B30 biofuel can be used in certain Diesel engines. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

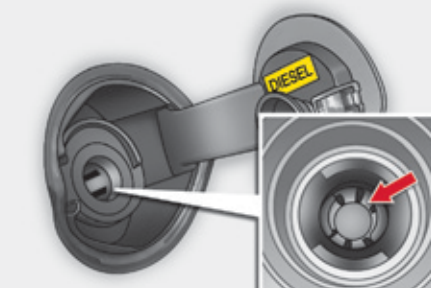
The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).



Misfuel prevention (Diesel)*

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It avoids the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.

Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of your Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.
Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.

It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible. Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! The snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size.
195/65 R15	9 mm
205/55 R16	
225/45 R17	
225/40 R18	cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum running speed authorised.

Advice on installation

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 30 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow, to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Very cold climate screen*

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

Fitting

- ☞ Offer up the very cold climate screen to the front of the lower section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage its fixing clips one by one.

Removal

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip in turn.

i Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen when:
- the ambient temperature exceeds 10 °C,
- towing,
- driving at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Towing a trailer



Your vehicle is primarily designed for transporting people and luggage, but it may also be used for towing a trailer.

i We recommend the use of genuine CITROËN towbars and their harnesses that have been tested and approved from the design stage of your vehicle, and that the fitting of the towbar is entrusted to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towbar is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and the driver must take particular care.
For more advice on driving when towing, refer to the corresponding section.

i For more information on weights (and the towed loads which apply to your vehicle) refer to the corresponding section.

7

* Depending on the country of sale.

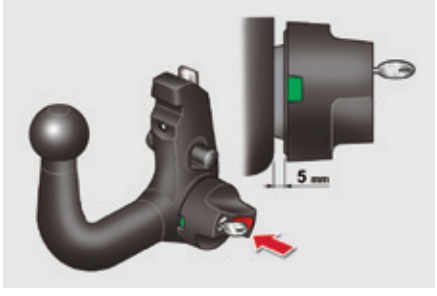
Towbar with quickly detachable towball

Presentation



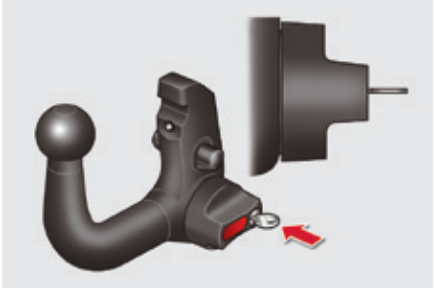
This towbar allows the towball to be fitted and removed quickly and easily without the use of tools. Installed behind the rear bumper, the towbar is invisible after removing the towball and folding the trailer harness socket carrier.

1. Carrier
2. Protective blanking plug.
3. Security ring.
4. Folding trailer harness socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking / unlocking wheel.
7. Security key lock.
8. Locking wheel protector.
9. Ball protector.
10. Storage bag.



A. Locked position

The locking wheel is not in contact with the towball (gap of about 5 mm).
The green mark is visible.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing rearward.



B. Unlocked position

The locking wheel is in contact with the towball.
Then green mark is hidden.
The lock for the locking wheel is facing forward.

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

i For information on the maximum trailer weight and the recommended nose weight, refer to the "Technical data" section.
For information on safely towing a trailer, refer to the "Towing a trailer" section.

Before each use

Check that the towball is correctly fitted by verifying the following points:

- the towball is correctly locked in place (position **A**),
- the security key lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must no longer move at all in its carrier; try to shake it by hand.

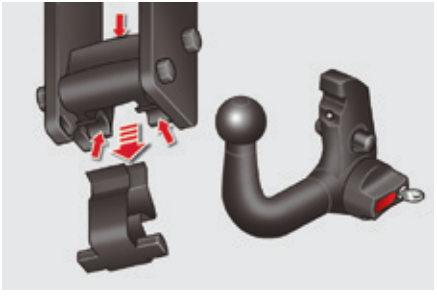
During use

Never unlock the device when a trailer or load carrier is fitted to the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle plus trailer (Gross Train Weight - GTW).
Before driving, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.
For more information on adjusting the headlamps, refer to the corresponding section.

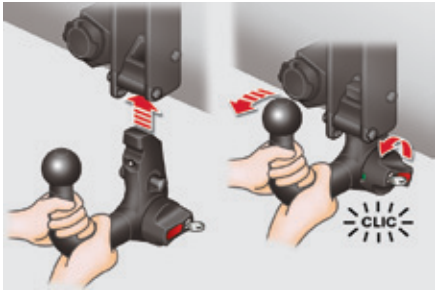
After use

For journeys made without a trailer or load carrier, the trailer harness socket must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier. This measure applies particularly if the towball could hinder visibility of the number plate or lighting.

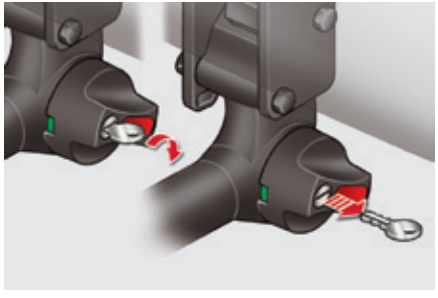
Fitting the towball



Remove the protective plug from the carrier and check the condition of the fixing system.
If necessary, clean the carrier with a brush or clean cloth.
Take the towball from the storage bag.
Remove the protective cover from the ball and the protective cap from the locking wheel.
Stow the plug, cover and cap in the storage bag.
Check that the towball is unlocked (position **B**).
If not, insert the key in the lock and turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the mechanism.



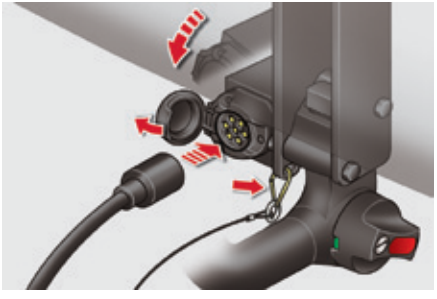
Take the towball in both hands; insert the end of the towball into the carrier by lifting it, then, to ensure that it has correctly locked in place, pull firmly down on the ball end of the towball.
The locking wheel automatically turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise, making a perceptible click; take care to keep your hands clear.



Check that the towball has correctly locked in place (position **A**).
Turn the key clockwise to lock the towball fixing mechanism.
Always remove the key and keep it in a safe place.

! If the key cannot be turned or removed, this means that the towball is not fitted correctly; start the procedure again.
If one of the locking conditions is not met, start the procedure again.
In all cases, if the marking remains red, do not use the towbar and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

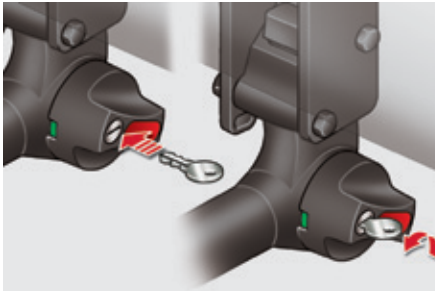
Removing the towball



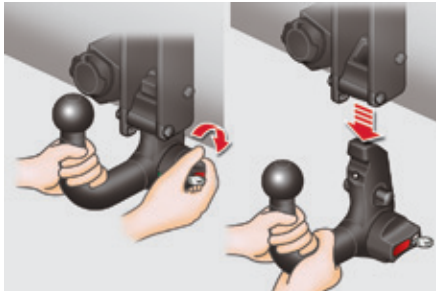
Attach the trailer to the towball.
Attach the cable on the trailer to the security ring located on the carrier.
Lower the trailer harness socket carrier by pulling down on the ring visible below the bumper.
Remove the protective cover from the socket and connect the trailer wiring harness.



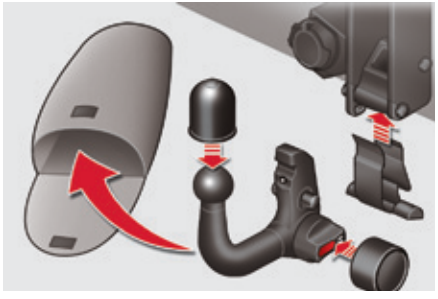
Disconnect the trailer harness from the socket on the carrier.
Detach the cable on the trailer from the security ring on the carrier.
Unhook the trailer from the towball.
Return the trailer harness connector carrier to the folded position.



Insert the key into the lock.
Turn the key anti-clockwise to unlock the towball fixing mechanism.



Grasp the towball firmly with one hand; with the other hand, press and turn the locking wheel clockwise as far as it will go.
Extract the towball downward.



Refit the protective cover for the ball and the protective cover for the locking wheel.
Stow the towball in its bag.
Refit the protective blanking plug to the carrier.

! Be ready for the weight of the towball (around 3.5 kg). Risk of injury!

Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier remain clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high pressure jet wash, the towbar harness socket carrier must be folded away, the towball removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier.

For any work on the towbar, got to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning, the heated rear screen...
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the period of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio equipment, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined period of thirty minutes.

This period may be greatly reduced if the battery is not fully charged.

Switching to economy mode

Once this period has elapsed, a message appears in the screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

If the telephone is being used at the same time with the touch screen tablet, it will be interrupted after 10 minutes.

Exiting economy mode

These functions are reactivated automatically the next time the vehicle is driven.

☞ In order to resume the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run for a few minutes.

The time available to you will then be double the period for which the engine is left running. However, this period will always be between five and thirty minutes.

A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the 12 V battery, refer to the corresponding section.

Audio pre-equipment

Your vehicle is equipped with certain factory-fitted audio equipment:

- a dual-function aerial at the rear of the roof,
- a coaxial aerial cable,
- basic interference suppression,
- cabling for speakers in the front doors and tweeters in the dashboard,
- cabling for speakers in the rear doors,
- two 8-way connectors.

i Before installing a radio unit or speakers in your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain a suitable wiring harness.

Fitting an audio unit



The audio unit is fitted in place of one of the storage boxes located above the heating and air conditioning control panel.

☞ Unclip the storage box on each side using a screwdriver and pull out.

You will then have access to an aerial coaxial cable and two 8-way connectors.

Then refer to the instructions provided with your audio unit.

Fitting speakers

It is possible to fit:

- 165 mm diameter speakers in the front doors,
- 130 mm diameter speakers in the rear doors,
- 22.5 mm diameter tweeters in the top of the dashboard.

Connectors

8-way connector (A)

A1: -
A2: -
A3: -
A4: -
A5: -
A6: (+) Ignition positive (in this case, the audio equipment only operates when the ignition is on)
A7: (+) Permanent
A8: Earth

8-way connector (B)

B1: (+) Rear right speaker
B2: (-) Rear right speaker
B3: (+) Front right speaker and tweeter
B4: (-) Front right speaker and tweeter
B5: (+) Front left speaker and tweeter
B6: (-) Front left speaker and tweeter
B7: (+) Rear left speaker
B8: (-) Rear left speaker

! Never use a separate wire to connect the (+) of your audio equipment (risk of discharging of the battery).

Changing a wiper blade

Before removing a front wiper blade

☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.

Removing

☞ Raise the corresponding wiper arm.
☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

Fitting

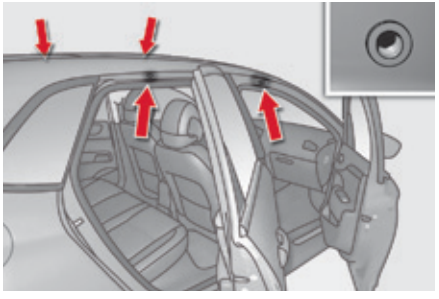
☞ Put the corresponding new wiper blade in place and clip it.
☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

After fitting a front wiper blade

☞ Switch on the ignition.
☞ Operate the wiper stalk again to park the wiper blades.

Fitting roof bars

For safety reasons and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.



When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed.
The roof bar fixings include a stud to be fitted to the hole at each fixing point.
Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the guide supplied with the bars.

Maximum load distributed over the roof bars, for a load height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carriers):

- for roof bars with pads at **90 mm**: **50 kg**,
- for roof bars with pads at **150 mm**: **80 kg**.

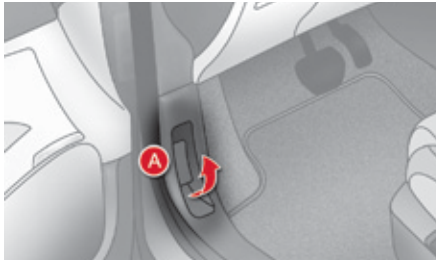
For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.
Be sure to refer to local legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

Bonnet

Opening

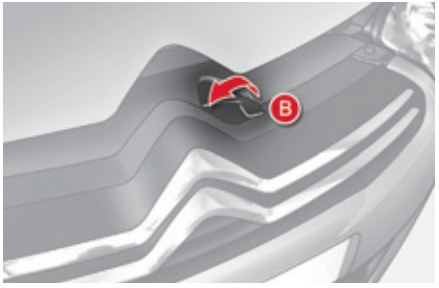
! Before doing anything under the bonnet, switch off the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

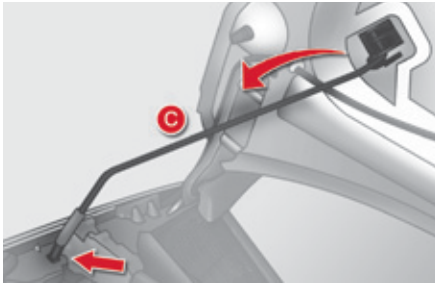


- ☞ Open the front left door.
- ☞ Pull the interior bonnet release lever **A**, located at the bottom of the door aperture.

i The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet while the front left door is closed.



- ☞ Push the exterior safety catch **B** to the left and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay **C** from its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- ☞ Fix the stay in the notch to hold the bonnet open.

! Do not open the bonnet in high winds. When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns).

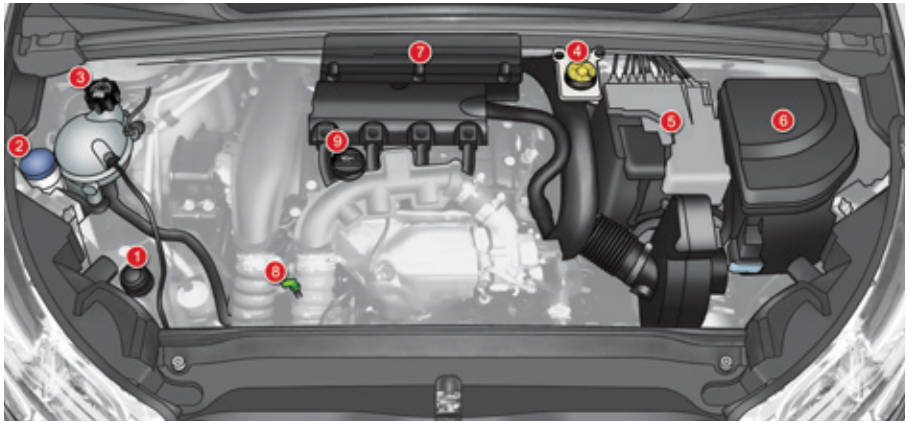
! Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, ...) be limited.

Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support notch.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing on the back of the bonnet.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it at the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is secured correctly.

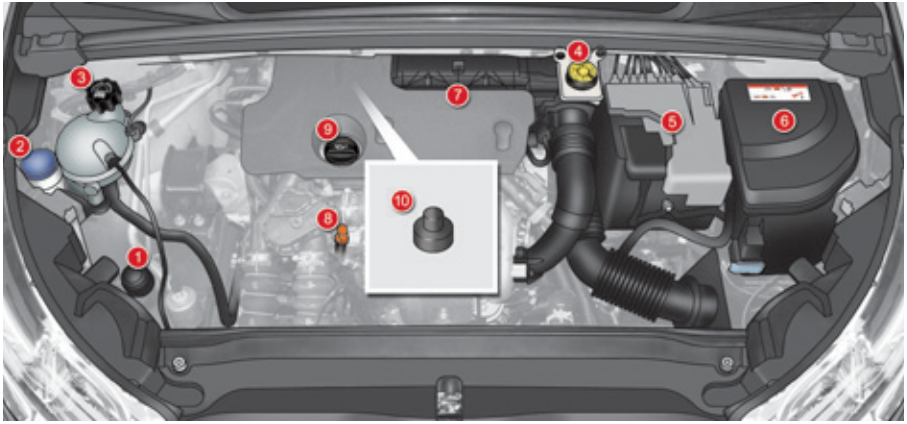
Petrol engines

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.



Diesel engines

1. Power steering reservoir.
2. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
3. Coolant header tank.
4. Brake fluid reservoir.
5. Battery / Fuses.
6. Fusebox.
7. Air filter.
8. Engine oil dipstick.
9. Engine oil filler cap.
10. Priming pump*.



! The Diesel fuel system operates under high pressure:
- Never carry out any work on this system yourself.
- HDi engines make use of advanced technology.

All maintenance and repairs require specially trained staff, which only a CITROËN dealer can provide.

* According to engine.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles so equipped, or using the dipstick.

i To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine having been off for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3 000 miles (5 000 kms).

Checking using the dipstick

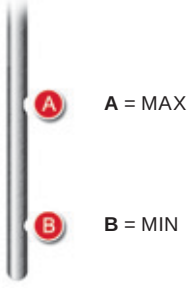
☞ Locate the dipstick in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

For more information on the petrol or Diesel engine, refer to the corresponding section.

☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and remove it completely.

☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.

☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between the marks **A** and **B**.



A = MAX

B = MIN

If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping-up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping-up the engine oil level

☞ Locate the oil filler cap in the engine compartment of your vehicle.

For more information on the petrol or Diesel engine, refer to the corresponding section.

☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to reveal the filler aperture.

☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

☞ Add more oil if necessary.

☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

After topping-up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emission control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the interval for this operation.

Fluid specification

The brake fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Power steering fluid level



The power steering fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. With the engine cold, unscrew the cap to check the level.

Coolant level

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

When the engine is warm, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid any risk of scalding, unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. When the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up the level.

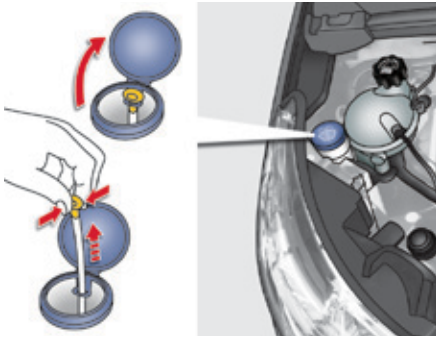
Fluid specification

The coolant must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Screenwash / headlamp wash fluid level

To check the level or top up the fluid on vehicle fitted with headlamp washers, immobilise the vehicle and switch of the engine.



- Open the bonnet and secure it with the stay.
- Open the screenwash reservoir filler cap.
- Take and pinch the level gauge to block its breather.
- Remove the gauge completely from the reservoir to read the level in the transparent section.
- Top up if necessary.
- Refit the filler cap to the reservoir and close the bonnet.

Specification of the fluid

To ensure optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, the fluid should never be topped up or replaced by plain water.
In wintry conditions, the use of a fluid with an ethyl alcohol or methanol base is recommended.

Additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

Topping up

The reservoir must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop (France) or to an authorised waste disposal site.

Checks

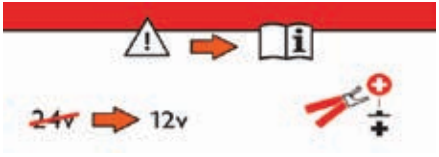
Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine. Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check that the terminals are clean and correctly tightened, particularly in summer and winter.

When carrying out work on the battery, refer to the "12 V battery" section for details of the precautions to be taken before disconnecting the battery and following its reconnection.



The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a specific 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification. The involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

Air filter and passenger compartment filter



Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement intervals for these components.

Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace them twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Replace the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the replacement interval for this component.

Particle filter (Diesel)

The start of saturation of the particle filter is indicated by:



- fixed illumination of the particle filter warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that there is a risk of blockage of the particle filter.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 40 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.

If the warning lamp stays on, refer to the "Additive level" section.

i On a new vehicle, the first operations of regeneration of the particle filter may be accompanied by the smell of "burning", which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for the checking interval for this component.

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).
Refer to the manufacturer's service schedule for details of the level checking interval for this component.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.
Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Manual parking brake



If a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

Checking this system must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the electric parking brake, refer to the corresponding section.

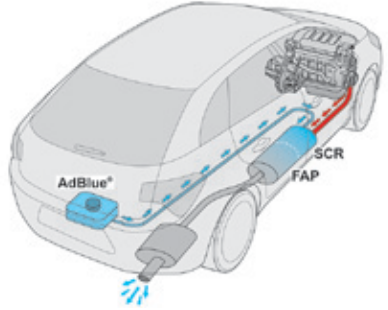
! Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of units as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® additive and SCR system for BlueHDi Diesel engines

To assure respect for the environment and conformity with the new Euro 6 emissions standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with an effective system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a particle filter (FAP) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

Presentation of the SCR system

Using an additive called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrous oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® additive is held in a special tank located under the boot at the rear of the vehicle. It has a capacity of 17 litres: this provides a driving range of about 12 500 miles (20 000 km), after which an alert is triggered warning you when the reserve remaining is enough for just 1 500 miles (2 400 km).

During each scheduled service of your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, the AdBlue® additive tank is refilled in order to allow normal operation of the SCR system.

If the estimated mileage between two services is greater than 12 500 miles (20 000 km), we recommend that you go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the necessary top-up carried out.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 650 miles (1 100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue® additive**

The AdBlue® additive freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Topping-up the AdBlue® additive

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top-up the additive between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement.
You can got to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you envisage topping-up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

Precautions in use

The AdBlue® additive is an urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (kept in a cool area).
In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes.
If a burning sensation or irritation persists, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (high ambient temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the product. Ammonia vapour has en irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original bottle.
Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.

Use only AdBlue® additive that meets the ISO 22241 standard.

! Never dilute the additive with water.
Never pour the additive into the Diesel fuel tank.



AdBlue®

The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies toping-up. You can obtain 1.89 litre (half a US gallon) bottles from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never top-up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

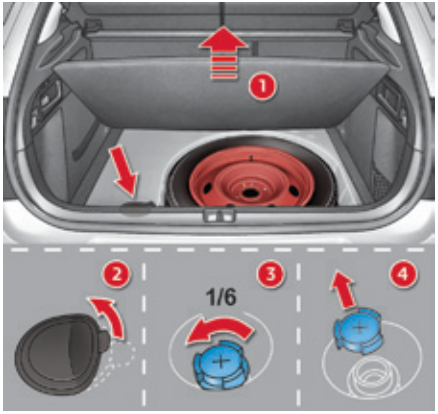
AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It is recommended that bottles be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight.
Under these conditions, the additive can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never store bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

Procedure

Before topping-up, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.
In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into its tank. Park your vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key, or if your vehicle has one, press the START/STOP button to switch off the engine.



☞ Raise the boot floor for access to the AdBlue® tank.
Secure the boot floor by attaching its cord to the hook on the parcel shelf support.

☞ Unclip the black plastic blanking plug using its tab.

☞ Insert your fingers into the aperture and turn the blue cap a 6th of a turn anti-clockwise.

☞ Carefully lift off the cap, without dropping it.



☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, read carefully the instructions on use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

! Important: if your vehicle's AdBlue® tank is completely empty - which is confirmed by the alert displays and the impossibility of starting the engine - you must add at least 3.8 litres (so two 1.89 litre bottles).

☞ After emptying the bottle, wipe away any spillage around the tank filler using a damp cloth.

! If any additive is split or splashed, wash immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the additive has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

☞ Refit the blue cap to the tank and turn it a 6th of a turn clockwise, to its stop.
☞ Refit the black plastic blanking plug, clipping it in on the flap
☞ Detach the cord from the parcel shelf support and lower the boot floor.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of additive**, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system into the passenger compartment**. Switch on the ignition, then, after 10 seconds, start the engine.

Never dispose of AdBlue® additive bottles in the household waste. Place them in a special container provided this purpose or take them to your dealer.

Accessories

A wide range of accessories and genuine parts is available from the CITROËN dealer network.
These accessories and parts are all suitable for your vehicle and benefit from CITROËN's recommendation and warranty.

Conversion kits

You can obtain an "Enterprise" kit to convert a trade vehicle to a private car and vice-versa.

"Transport systems":

boot carpet, boot liner, boot net, boot spacers, transverse roof bars, bicycle carrier, ski carrier, roof boxes, towbars, towbar wiring harnesses...

"Security and safety":

anti-intrusion alarm, microwave sensor, anti-tilt sensor, stolen vehicle tracking system, child seats and booster cushions, breathalyser, first aid kit, fire extinguisher, warning triangle, high visibility vest, dog guard, pet seat belt, wheel security bolts, snow chains, non-slip covers, front foglamp kit...

"Comfort":

door deflectors, side window blinds, rear screen blind, insulated module, coat hanger fixed to head restraint, reading lamp, mirror for caravan, cruise control, scented air freshener and cartridges, parking sensors...

"Styling":

gear lever knobs, aluminium foot rest, alloy wheels, wheel embellishers, chrome mirror shells, chrome door aperture finishers, door sill finishers, tailgate lower chrome finisher...

"Protection":

mats*, seat covers compatible with lateral airbags, door sill protectors, mud flaps, door protective rubbing strips, bumper protection strips, protective covers for pets, vehicle cover...

! If a towbar and wiring harness are fitted outside the CITROËN dealer network, the installation must be done using the vehicle's electrical pre-equipment and in line with the manufacturer's recommendations.

* To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- ensure that mats are correctly positioned and secured,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

"Multimedia":

audio systems, steering mounted audio controls, speakers, Hi-Fi module, Bluetooth hands-free system, portable satellite navigation system, semi-integral support bracket for portable navigation system, mapping update CD, driving assistant, portable video screen, portable video support bracket, 230 V/50 Hz socket, 230 V/50 Hz adaptor, iPhone® compatible mobile phone charger, mobile phone/smartphone bracket, Wi-Fi on board...

Installation of radio communication transmitters

Before installing any after-market radio communication transmitter, you can contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

By going to a CITROËN dealer, you can also obtain cleaning and maintenance products (interior and exterior) - including ecological products in the "TECHNATURE" range -, products for topping up (screenwash...), touch-up pens and paint aerosols for the exact colour of your vehicle, recharges (cartridge for the temporary puncture repair kit...), ...

Depending on the legislation in force in the country, certain safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalyzers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle.

The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories which are not recommended by CITROËN may result in a failure of your vehicle's electronic system and excessive electrical consumption. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended equipment and accessories.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.
For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

For more information on the Diesel misfuel prevention device, refer to the corresponding section.

If the engine does not start first time, don't keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

BlueHDi engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.



Other HDi engines

(except BlueHDi version)

- Add at least five litres of Diesel fuel to the tank.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the styling cover for access to the priming pump.
- Squeeze and release the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Refit the styling cover and clip it in place.
- Close the bonnet.

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Description of the kit



A. "Sealant" or "Air" position selector.
B. On **"I"** / off **"O"** switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bar and psi).
E. Compartment housing:
- a cable with adaptor for 12 V socket,
- various inflation adaptors for accessories, such as balls, bicycle tyres...

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of a compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair or for inflating a small inflatable accessory.



F. Sealant cartridge.
G. White pipe with cap for repair.
H. Black pipe for inflation.
I. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker **I** must be affixed to the vehicle's steering wheel to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.
Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure



1. Sealing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the selector **A** to the "sealant" position.
- Check that the switch **B** is in position **"O"**.



i Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.

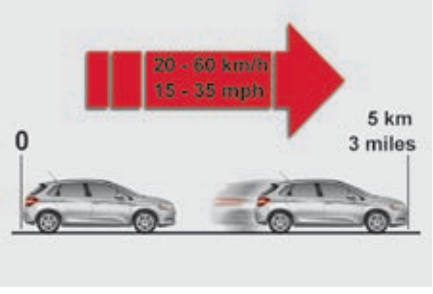
! Take care, this product is harmful (e.g. ethylene-glycol, colophony...) if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.



- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

i Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.





☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch **B** to position **"I"** until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars.
The sealant is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing).

i If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe.
Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.
☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

i Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.







2. Inflation

- Turn the selector **A** to the "air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel.

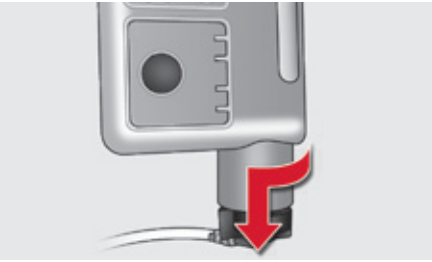


- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle again and leave the engine running.

! As soon as possible, go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the left hand door aperture).
A loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Remove and stow the kit.
- Drive at reduced speed (50 mph [80 km/h] max) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 120 miles (200 km).

Removing the cartridge



- Stow the black pipe.
- Detach the angled base from the white pipe.
- Support the compressor vertically.
- Unscrew the cartridge from the bottom.

! Beware of discharges of fluid.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; even if only partly used, it must be replaced.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a CITROËN dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from CITROËN dealers or from a qualified workshop.

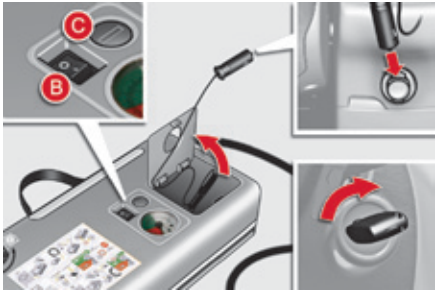
Checking tyre pressures / inflating accessories

You can also use the compressor, without injecting any product, to:
- check or adjust the pressure of your tyres,
- inflate other accessories (balls, bicycle tyres...).



- Turn the selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the black pipe **H** fully.
- Connect the black pipe to the valve of the wheel or accessory.
If necessary, fit one of the adaptors supplied with the kit first.





- Connect the compressor's electrical connector to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Start the vehicle and let the engine run.
- Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **"I"**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **"O"** and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label or the accessory's pressure label.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Spare wheel

Procedure for changing a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre for the spare wheel, using the tools supplied with the vehicle.

Access to the tools



The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to them:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear shelf support,
- ☞ with a standard size spare wheel, unclip and remove the box in the middle of the wheel containing the tools,
  or
- ☞ with a "space-saver" spare wheel; lift the wheel at the rear towards you for access to the storage box containing the tools.



List of tools

1. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fixing bolts.
2. Jack with integral handle.
   For raising the vehicle.
3. Bolt cover removal tool.
   For removing the bolt head protectors on alloy wheels.
4. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).
   For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.

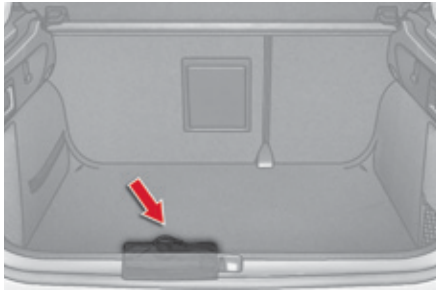
Wheel with trim

When removing the wheel, detach the trim first using the wheelbrace **1** pulling at the valve passage hole.

When refitting the wheel, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

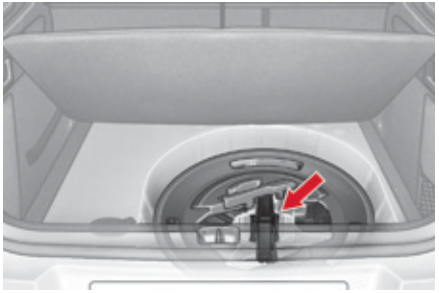
All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and can vary according to equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack does not require any maintenance.



For BlueHDi Diesel versions

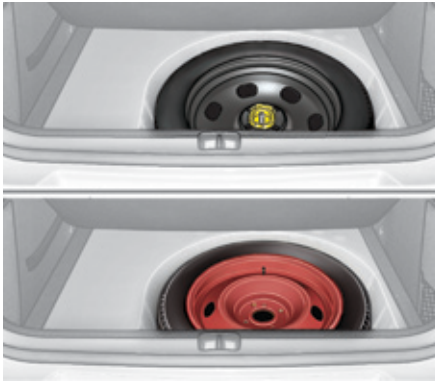
If your vehicle has an **electric parking brake**, the jack is stowed in a bag placed in the boot.



If your vehicle has a **manual parking brake**, the jack is stowed under the spare wheel and under the storage box:

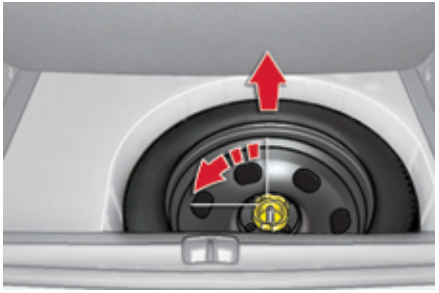
- ☞ remove the "space-saver" type spare wheel,
- ☞ remove the polystyrene storage box,
- ☞ push the jack forward, then lift it by its rear part.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel; for some countries of sale it is the "space saver" type.
For access to the spare wheel, first refer to "Access to the tools" in this section.

i If your vehicle has an electric parking brake, only a "space saver" type of wheel can be stowed in the boot.



Taking out the standard wheel

- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt.
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.



Putting the standard wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Unscrew the yellow central bolt by a few turns then put it in place in the centre of the wheel.



- ☞ Tighten fully until the central bolt clicks to retain the wheel correctly.
- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.

Tyre under-inflation detection

The spare wheel is not fitted with a sensor. The punctured wheel must be repaired by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Removing a wheel



Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery ground.
Apply the parking brake unless it has been programmed to automatic mode, switch off the ignition and engage first gear* to lock the wheels.
Check that the braking warning lamps in the instrument panel are on (not flashing).
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.
If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

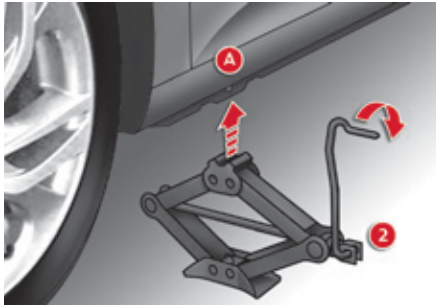


List of operations

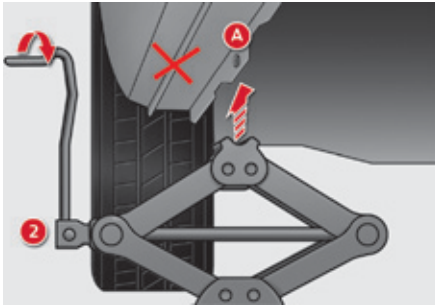


- Remove the bolt cover from each of the bolts using the tool **3** (according to equipment).
- Fit the security socket **4** on the wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt.
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.

* position **P** for an automatic gearbox.



☞ Place the foot of the jack **2** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



☞ Extend the jack **2** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B** used; the contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.

☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



☞ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.

☞ Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or drop - Risk of injury!
Take care to position the jack only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area of the vehicle.
Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack dropping - Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



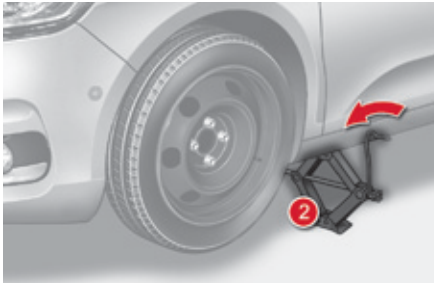
Fitting a steel or "space-saver" spare wheel

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the steel or "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

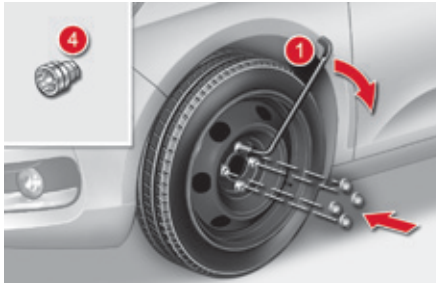


List of operations

- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.



- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **2** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **4**.
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **1** only.
- Refit the bolt covers to the bolts (according to equipment).
- Store the tools in the box.

After changing a wheel

To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.

When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Changing a bulb

! The headlamps are fitted with polycarbonate glass with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

! Changing a bulb should only be done after the headlamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is imperative to use only anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs to avoid damaging the headlamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

Front lamps



Model with xenon and directional headlamps

1. **Directional dipped / main beam headlamps (D1S).**
2. **Direction indicators (PY21W amber).**
3. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W XL).**
4. **Foglamps (H11).**

! Risk of electrocution

Xenon bulbs (D1S) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)

1. **Direction indicators (H21 clear).**
2. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
3. **Main beam headlamps (H1).**
4. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (P21/5W XL).**
5. **Foglamps (H11).**

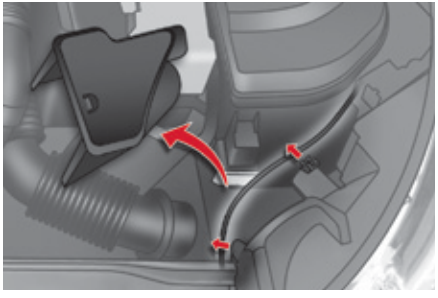
Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.



Model with halogen headlamps and LED light signature* (type 2)

1. **Direction indicators (LEDs).**
2. **Daytime running lamps / sidelamps (LEDs).**
3. **Dipped beam headlamps (H7).**
4. **Main beam headlamps (H7).**
5. **Foglamps (H11).**

Bulbs with lugs, type H1, H7... take care to position them correctly to ensure the best lighting.



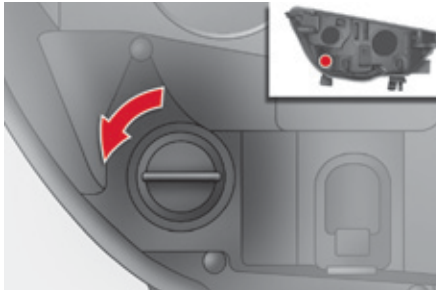
Access to bulbs

Depending on the engine and only on the left hand side, you must first carry out the following operations for access to the protective covers on the bulbs.

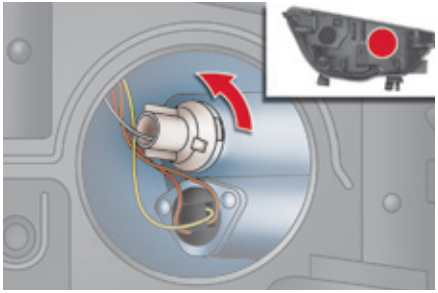
- ☞ Remove the air deflector by unclipping each of its three attachment points.
- ☞ Unclip the bonnet release cable at its two fixings.
- ☞ Move the cable down.

After changing the failed bulb, remember to put everything back in place (cable and air deflector).

* LED: light emitting diodes.







Changing direction indicator bulbs

Rapid flashing of the direction indicator warning lamp (right or left) indicates the failure of a bulb on that side.

Model with halogen headlamps (type 1)

- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Model with halogen headlamps (type 2)

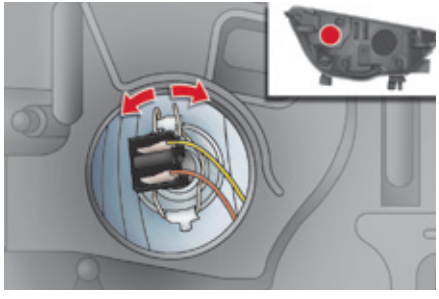
For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Model with Xenon headlamps

- Remove the protective cover by pulling its tongue.
- Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out.
- Turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Amber coloured bulbs, such as the direction indicators, must be replaced with bulbs of identical specifications and colour.

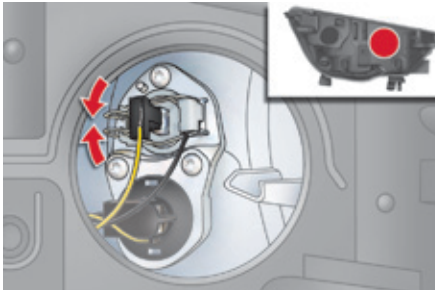


Changing dipped beam headlamp bulbs (on models with halogen headlamps)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Spread the springs to release the bulb.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

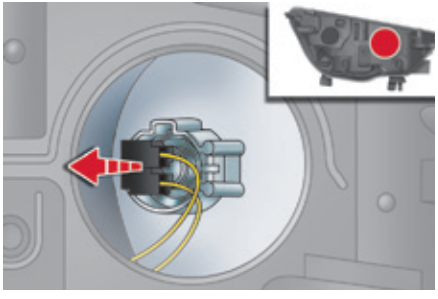
! When refitting, close the protective cover carefully to preserve the sealing of the headlamp.



Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with type 1 halogen headlamps)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Squeeze the springs to release the bulb.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

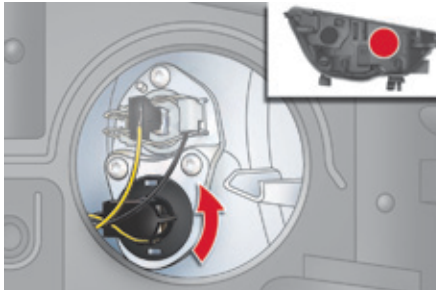
To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing main beam headlamp bulbs (on models with type 2 halogen headlamps)

- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing daytime running lamp / sidelamp bulbs (on models with xenon or type 1 halogen headlamps)

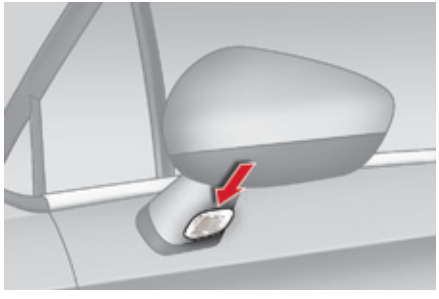
- ☞ Remove the protective cover by pulling the tab.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and pull it out
- ☞ Pull the bulb out and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.



Changing daytime running lamps / sidelamps (on models with type 2 halogen headlamps)

For the replacement of this type of LED lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

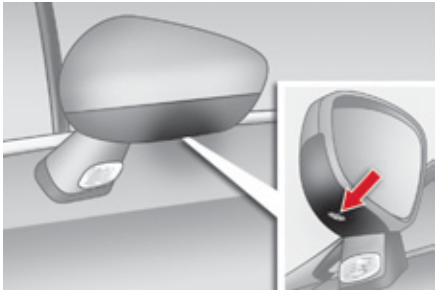


Changing integrated direction indicator side repeaters

- ☞ Insert a flat screwdriver towards the centre of the repeater between the repeater and the base of the mirror.
- ☞ Tilt the flat screwdriver to extract the repeater and remove it.
- ☞ Disconnect the repeater connector.

To reassemble, carry out these operations in reverse order.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain replacement repeaters.



Changing the side spotlamps (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Changing foglamp bulbs

- ☞ Introduce a flat screwdriver in the hole in the finisher.
- ☞ Pull and lever to unclip the bumper finisher (the parking sensor stays with the finisher).
- ☞ Remove the two module fixing screws and remove it from its housing.
- ☞ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and extract it.
- ☞ Pull the bulb and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

To replace these bulbs you may also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

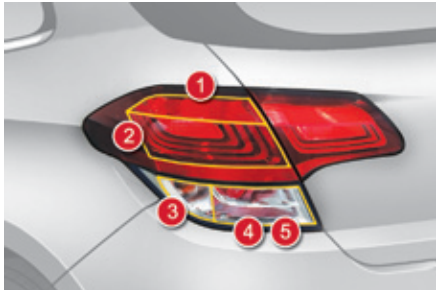
Rear lamps



Model with conventional lamps (type 1)

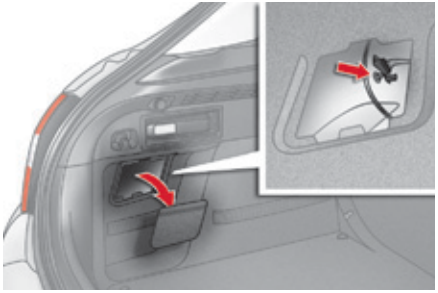
1. **Brake lamp / sidelamp (P21/5W).**
2. **Direction indicator (PY21W amber).**
3. **Reversing lamp (P21W).**
4. **Rear foglamp (P21W).**

Amber bulbs, such as those for the direction indicators, must be replaced by bulbs of the same rating and colour. The lamps on the tailgate are dummy units. They are there for aesthetic purposes only.



Model with 3D rear lamps

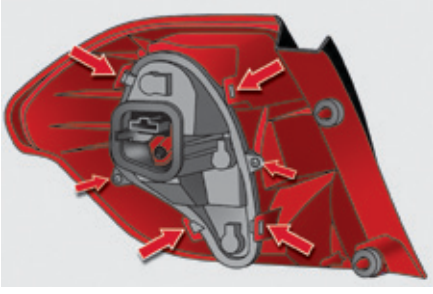
1. **Brake lamp (P21W).**
2. **Sidelamp (R10W).**
3. **Direction indicator (PY21W amber).**
4. **Rear foglamp, offside (P21W).**
5. **Reversing lamp, nearside (P21W).**



Access to rear lamps

You will need a flat screwdriver and a 10 mm box spanner.
The four bulbs are changed from inside the boot:

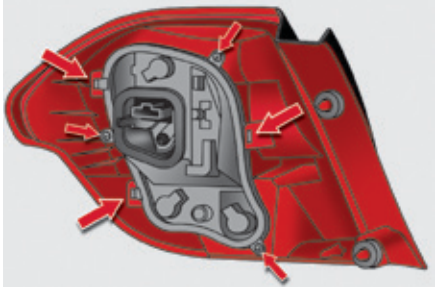
- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ remove the access flap from the corresponding side trim panel,
- ☞ unclip the lamp unit connector,
- ☞ as a precaution, place a cloth in the bottom of the housing to catch the nut if it is dropped on removal,
- ☞ slacken the hexagonal nut using a 10 mm box spanner then remove the nut by hand,
- ☞ carefully remove the lamp unit by pulling out it straight out towards the rear.



Changing rear lamp bulbs (type 1)

After removing the lamp unit, carry out the following operations to replace the failed bulb:

- ☞ remove the two bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ spread the four tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.



Changing rear lamp bulbs (type 2)

After removing the lamp unit, carry out the following operations to replace the failed bulb:

- ☞ remove the three bulb holder fixing screws,
- ☞ spread the three tabs and remove the bulb holder,
- ☞ turn the bulb a quarter of a turn and change it.

To refit, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Take care to engage the lamp unit in its guides, while keeping it in line with the vehicle.
Tighten sufficiently to ensure sealing, but without forcing, so as to avoid damaging the lamp.

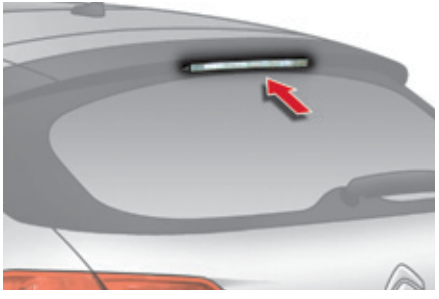


Number plate lamps (W5W)

To facilitate the removal of the lamp, carry out this operation with the tailgate half open.

- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into the lens cutout.
- ☞ Push it outwards.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

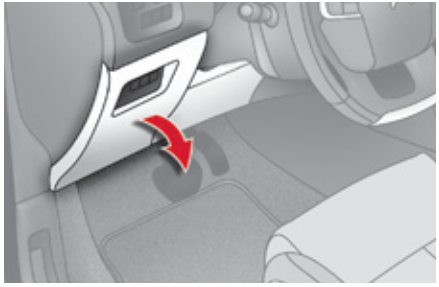


Third brake lamp (LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of light emitting diode lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezer is attached to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.
For access to it:

- ☞ unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left,
- ☞ disengage the cover completely and turn it over,



- ☞ remove the carrier, on the back of which the tweezer is fitted.

Changing a fuse

Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the failed fuse using the tables and diagrams in the following pages.

To replace a fuse, you must:

- ☞ use the special tweezer to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); the use of a fuse of different rating fuse may cause malfunctions (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs soon after replacing the fuse, have the electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The replacement of a fuse not mentioned in the tables below may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good **Failed**



Tweezer

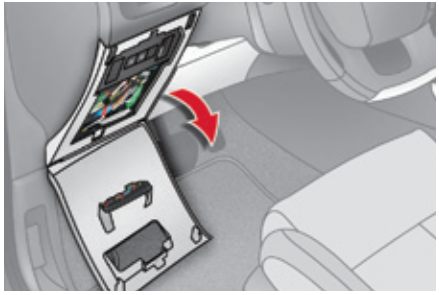
i Installing electrical accessories

Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

! CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

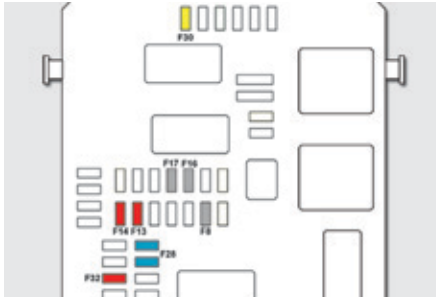
Dashboard fuses

The fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).



Access to the fuses

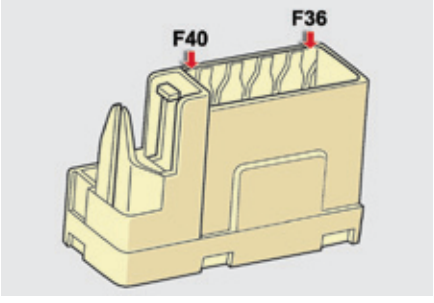
☞ Refer to the paragraph "Access to the tools".



Fuse tables

Fusebox 1

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F8	**3 A**	Alarm siren, alarm ECU.
F13	**10 A**	Front 12 V socket.
F14	**10 A**	12 V socket in boot.
F16	**3 A**	Rear map reading lamps, glove box illumination.
F17	**3 A**	Sun visor illumination, front map reading lamps.
F28	**15 A**	Audio system, radio (after-market).
F30	**20 A**	Rear wiper.
F32	**10 A**	Hi-Fi amplifier.



Fusebox 2

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F36	**15 A**	Rear 12 V socket.
F37	**-**	Not used.
F38	**-**	Not used.
F39	**-**	Not used.
F40	**25 A**	230 V / 50 Hz socket.

Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery (left-hand side).



Access to the fuses

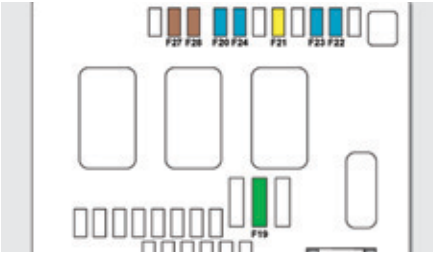
- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.

For information on the special requirements and precautions to take before changing a fuse, refer to the start of this section.

- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover carefully to ensure sealing of the fusebox.

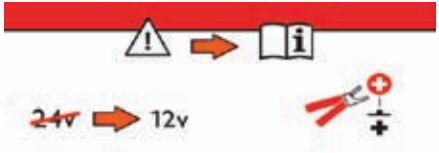
Fuse table

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F19	30 A	Windscreen wipers slow / fast speed.
F20	15 A	Front and rear screenwash pump.
F21	20 A	Headlamp wash pump.
F22	15 A	Horn.
F23	15 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F24	15 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F27	5 A	Left-hand dipped headlamp.
F28	5 A	Right-hand dipped headlamp.



12 V battery

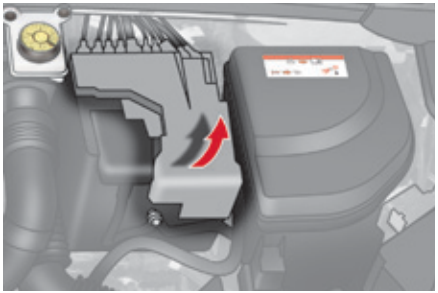
Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.



! The presence of this label, in particular with the Stop & Start system, indicates the use of a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specification; the involvement of a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop is essential when replacing or disconnecting the battery.

i After refitting the battery, the Stop & Start system will only be active after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the climatic conditions and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Access to the battery



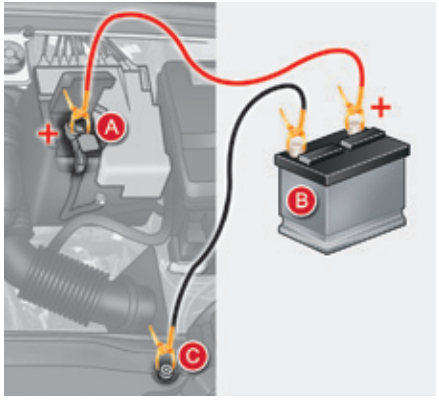
The battery is located under the bonnet.
For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,
- ☞ lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a slave battery (external or on another vehicle) and jump lead cables.

! First check that the slave battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
Do not try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal when the engine is running.



- Remove the plastic cover from the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- Connect the red cable to the positive terminal (+) of the flat battery **A**, then to the positive terminal (+) of the slave battery **B**.
- Connect one end of the green or black cable to the negative terminal (-) of the slave battery **B** (or earth point on the other vehicle).
- Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle (or on the engine mounting).
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.
If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.
- Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.

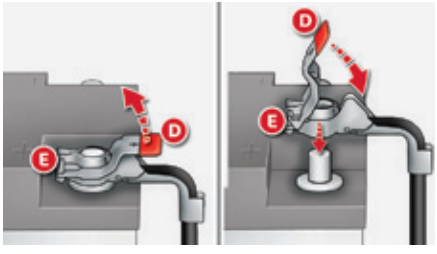
Charging the battery using a battery charger

With Stop & Start, the battery does not have to be disconnected for charging.

- Disconnect the battery from the vehicle.
- Follow the instructions for use provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
- Connect the battery starting with the negative terminal (-).
- Check that the terminals and connectors are clean. If they are covered with sulphate (whitish or greenish deposit), remove them and clean them.

Before disconnecting the battery

Wait 2 minutes after switching off the ignition before disconnecting the battery.
Close the windows and the doors before disconnecting the battery.



Disconnecting the (+) cable

- Raise the locking tab **D** fully to release the cable terminal clamp **E**.

Reconnecting the (+) cable

- Position the open clamp **E** of the cable on the positive post (+) of the battery.
- Press vertically on the clamp **E** to position it correctly on the battery.
- Lock the clamp by spreading the positioning lug and then lowering the tab **D**.

Do not apply excessive force on the tab as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Reinitialisation after reconnection

After any reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait at least one minute before starting, to allow time for the initialisation of the electronic systems.
By referring to the corresponding sections, you should set or initialise the following systems yourself:

- one-touch electric windows,
- time and date,
- audio and navigation system settings.

Check that no alert message or warning lamp comes on after switching on the ignition.
However, if minor problems persist after carrying out these operations, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Some functions are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

The batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

It is advisable to disconnect the battery if the vehicle is to be left unused for more than one month.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Do not try to charge a frozen battery; the battery must first be thawed out to avoid the risk of explosion. If the battery has been frozen, before charging have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and the casing is not cracked, which could cause a leak of toxic and corrosive acid.
Do not reverse the polarity and use only a 12 V charger.
Do not disconnect the terminals while the engine is running.
Do not charge the batteries without disconnecting the terminals first.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Do not push the vehicle to start the engine if your vehicle has an automatic gearbox.

Towing the vehicle

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

To gain access to it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ secure it by hooking its cord on the hook on the rear parcel shelf support,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

! General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited.

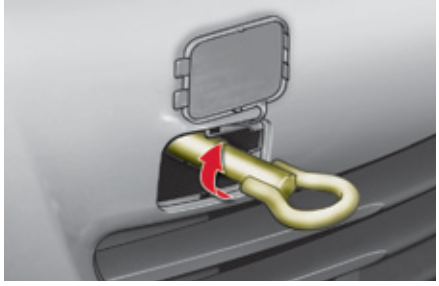
The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When towing a vehicle with the engine off, there is no longer any power assistance for braking or steering.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towing arm available...

Towing your vehicle

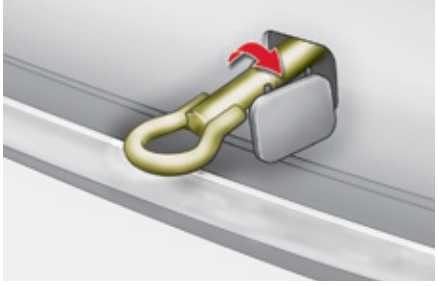


- On the front bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.

- Place the gear lever in neutral (position **N** on an automatic gearbox).
  Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (braking, transmission...) and the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

- Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Towing another vehicle



- On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- Screw the towing eye in fully.
- Install the towing arm.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

Petrol engines and gearboxes

Petrol engine	PureTech 110	VTi 120	PureTech 130 S&S	
Gearbox	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**
Model code: NC...	**HNZ6 HNZ6/1 HNZ6/2**	**5FS0**	**HNYM/S HNYM/1S**	**HNYT/S HNYT/1S HNYT/2S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 199	1 598	1 199	
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 90.5	77 x 85.8	75 x 90.5	
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	81	88	96	
Max power engine speed (rpm)	5 500	6 000	5 500	
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	205	160	230	
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 500	4 250	1 750	
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes	
Oil capacity in litres (with filter replacement)	3.5	4.25	3.5	

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres.
.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Petrol weights and towed loads (in kg)

Petrol engine	PureTech 110	VTi 120	PureTech 130 S&S	
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)
Model code: NC...	HNZ6 HNZ6/1 -/2	5FS0	HNYM/S HNYM/1S	HNYT/S HNYT/1S -/2S
- Unladen weight	1 200	1 205	1 205	1 240
- Kerb weight*	1 275	1 280	1 280	1 315
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 770	1 765	1 790	1 810
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 970	3 065	3 090	3 110
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	1 200	1 300	1 300	1 300
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 450	1 550	1 550	1 550
- Unbraked trailer	635	640	640	655
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel engines and gearboxes

Diesel engine	HDi 90	HDi 90 FAP	BlueHDi 100	e-HDi 115
Gearbox	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (5-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**
Model code: NC...	**9HJC 9HJC/1**	**9HP0**	**BHY6 BHY6/1 BHY6/2S**	**9HD8/S 9HD8/1S 9HD8/2S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560	1 560	1 560	1 560
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3	75 x 88.3
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	68	68	73	84
Max power engine speed (rpm)	4 000	4 000	3 750	3 600
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	230	230	254	270
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750	1 750	1 750	1 750
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Particle filter (FAP)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Oil capacity in litres (with filter replacement)	3.75	3.75	3.75	3.75

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).
.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel engine	BlueHDi 115 S&S		BlueHDi 120 S&S		BlueHDi 150 S&S
Gearbox	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**	**EAT6 automatic (6-speed)**	**Manual (6-speed)**
Model code: NC...	**BHXM/S BHXM/1S BHXM/2S**	**BHXT/S BHXT/1S BHXT/2S**	**BHZM/S BHZM/1S BHZM/2S**	**BHZT/S BHZT/1S BHZT/2S**	**AHRM/S AHRM/1S AHRM/2S**
Cubic capacity (cc)	1 560		1 560		1 997
Bore x stroke (mm)	75 x 88.3		75 x 88.3		85 x 88
Max power*: EU standard (kW)	85		88		110
Max power engine speed (rpm)	3 500		3 500		4 000
Max torque: EU standard (Nm)	300		300		370
Max torque engine speed (rpm)	1 750		1 750		2 000
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel		Diesel
Catalytic converter	Yes		Yes		Yes
Particle filter (FAP)	Yes		Yes		Yes
Oil capacity in litres (with filter replacement)	3.75		3.75		6.1

* The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

.../S: model fitted with Stop & Start.
.../1: model fitted with low rolling resistance tyres (for example: MICHELIN Energy Saver).
.../2: model fitted with very low rolling resistance tyres.

Diesel weights and towed loads (in kg)

Diesel engine	HDi 90	HDi 90 FAP	BlueHDi 100		e-HDi 115	
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (5-speed)		Manual (6-speed)	
Model code: NC...	9HJC 9HJC/1	9HP0	BHY6 BHY6/1	BHY6/2S	9HD8/S 9HD8/1S	9HD8/2S
- Unladen weight	1 248	1 205	1 200	1 205	1 280	1 280
- Kerb weight*	1 323	1 280	1 275	1 280	1 355	1 355
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 745	1 790	1 830	1 840	1 820	1 820
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 545	2 890	3 130	3 140	3 120	2 220
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on 12 % gradient	800	1 100	1 300	1 300	1 300	400
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 050	1 350	1 550	1 550	1 550	600
- Unbraked trailer	640	640	635	640	670	400
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75	75	75

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Diesel engine	BlueHDi 115 S&S		BlueHDi 120 S&S		BlueHDi 150 S&S
Gearbox	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	EAT6 automatic (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code: NC...	BHXM/S BHXM/1S -/2S	BHXT/S BHXT/1S -/2S	BHZM/S BHZM/1S -/2S	BHZT/S BHZT/1S -/2S	AHRM/S AHRM/1S -/2S
- Unladen weight	1 280	1 300	1 280	1 300	1 360
- Kerb weight*	1 355	1 375	1 355	1 375	1 435
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 860	1 880	1 860	1 880	1 925
- Gross train weight (GTW) on 12 % gradient	3 160	3 080	3 160	3 080	3 425
- Braked trailer (within GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	1 300	1 200	1 300	1 200	1 500
- Braked trailer** (with load transfer within the GTW limit)	1 550	1 450	1 550	1 450	1 750
- Unbraked trailer	675	685	675	685	715
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75	75

* The kerb weight is equal to the unladen weight + driver (75 kg).

** The weight of the braked trailer can be increased, within the GTW limit, if the GVW of the towing vehicle is reduced by an equal amount. Warning: towing using a lightly loaded towing vehicle may have an adverse effect on its road holding.

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.

When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).

High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Weights and towed loads (in kg)

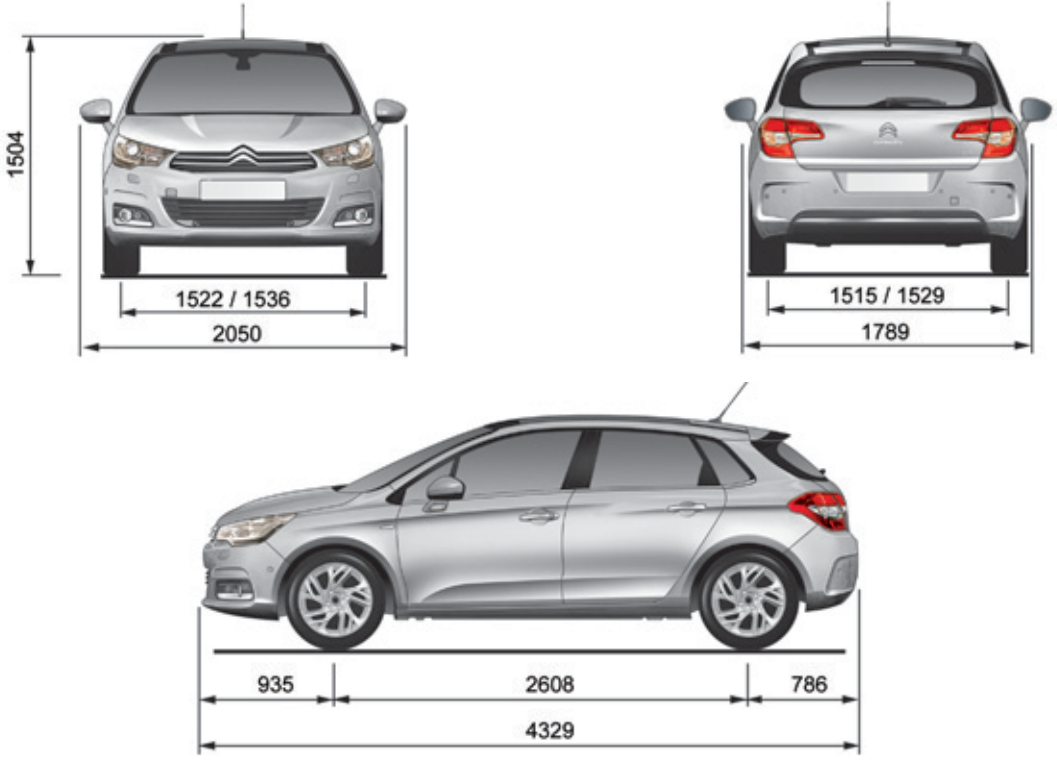
C4 Enterprise versions (2-seat)

Diesel engine	HDi 90 FAP	HDi 115	e-HDi 115	BlueHDi 100	BlueHDi 120 S&S
Gearbox	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (6-speed)	Manual (5-speed)	Manual (6-speed)
Model code: NR...	9HP0 9HP0/1	9HD8 9HD8/1	9HD8/1S 9HD7/1S	BHY6/1	BHZM/1S
- Unladen weight	1 313	1 283	1 283	1 326	1 389
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW)	1 745	1 810	1 810	1 775	1 840
- Payload (including the driver)	432	527	527	449	451
- Gross train weight (GTW) on a 12 % gradient	2 845	3 110	3 110	3 075	3 090
- Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 12 % gradient	1 100	1 300	1 300	1 300	1 250
- Unbraked trailer	635	670	670	650	685
- Recommended nose weight	75	75	75	75	75

The GTW and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1 000 metres; the towed load mentioned must be reduced by 10 % for each additional 1 000 metres of altitude.
When towing, the maximum authorised speed is reduced (comply with the legislation in force in your country).
High ambient temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine; if the ambient temperature is above 37 °C, limit the towed load.

Dimensions (in mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



Identification markings

Various visible markings for the identification of your vehicle.



A. Vehicle identification number (VIN) under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the bodywork near the suspension damper mounting.

B. Vehicle identification number on the dashboard.
This number is indicated on a self-adhesive label which is visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
The VIN is indicated on a self-destroying label affixed to the driver's centre pillar.

D. Tyre/paint label.
This label is affixed to the driver's front pillar.

It bears the following information:
- the tyre pressures, for unladen and laden conditions,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

The tyre pressures must be checked when the tyres are cold, at least once a month.

Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

Emergency or assistance call



Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.



Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.
At any time, pressing this button for more than 8 seconds cancels the call.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

This call is dealt with by the "Localised Emergency Call" centre, which receives locating information from the vehicle and can send a detailed alert to the appropriate emergency services.
In countries in which a centre is not operational, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is dealt with directly by the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your MyCITROËN personal space, via the CITROËN Internet website in your country, accessible on www.citroen.com.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



The orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

The orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



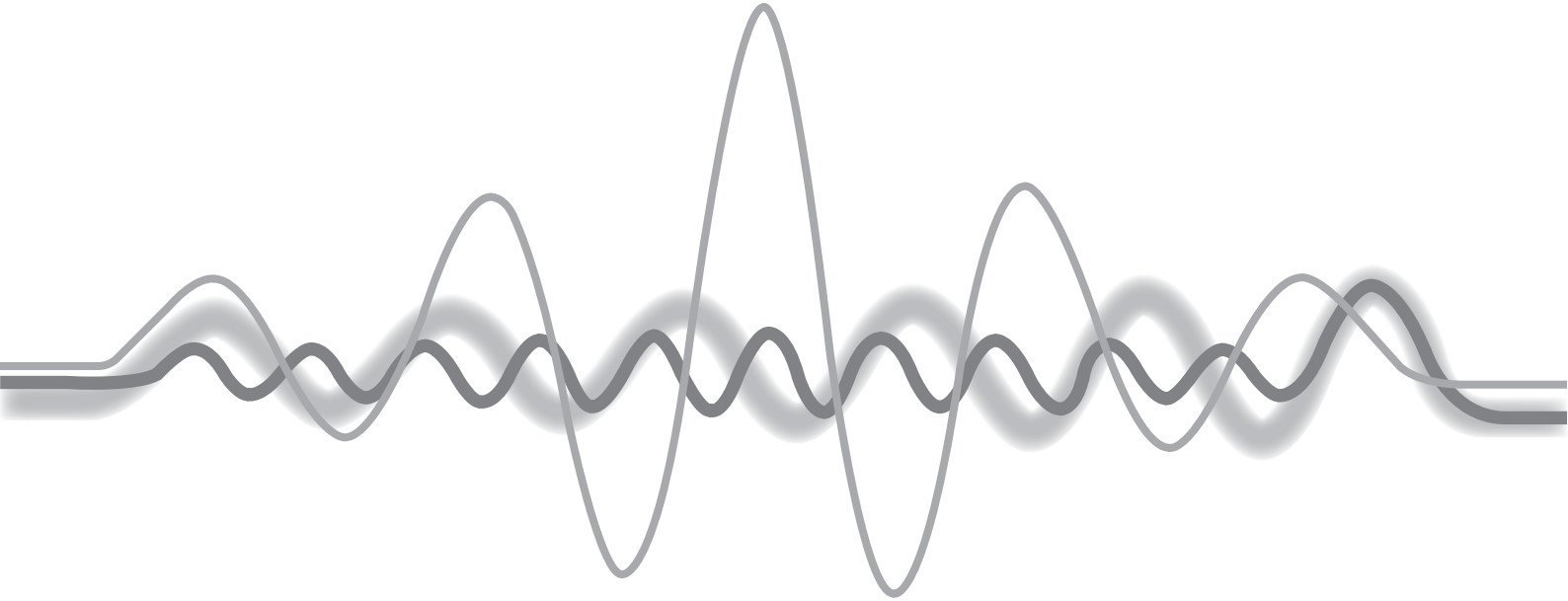
Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been started*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

* These services are subject to conditions and availability.
Consult a CITROËN dealer.

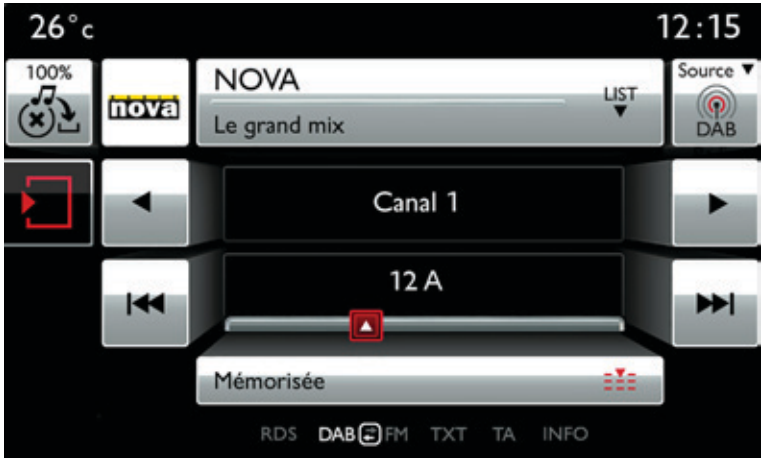
If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modified to suit your wishes.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.



7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	284
Steering mounted controls	286
Menus	287
Navigation	288
Navigation - Guidance	296
Traffic	300
Radio Media	302
Radio	308
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	310
Media	312
Settings	316
Connected services	324
Internet browser	325
MirrorLink™	328
CarPlay®	332
Telephone	336
Frequently asked questions	344

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

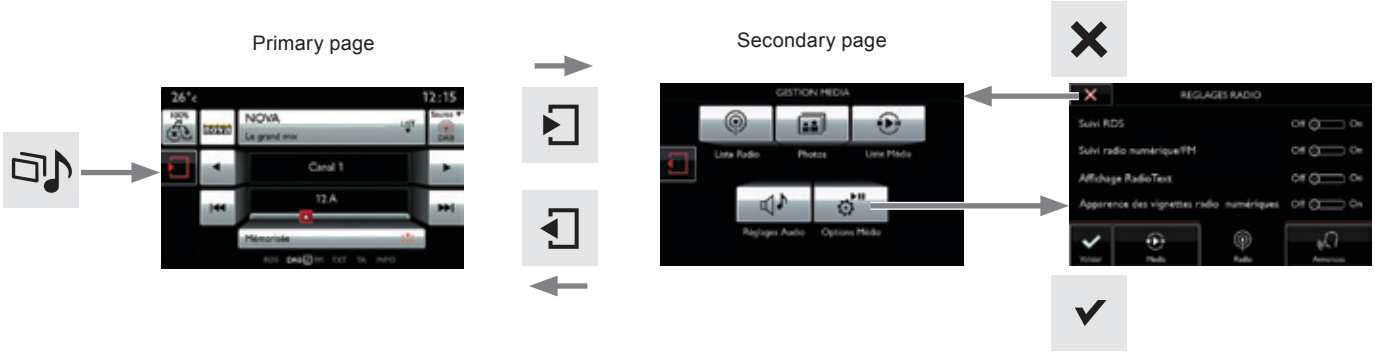
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of the energy economy mode message signals that the system is about to go into standby. Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

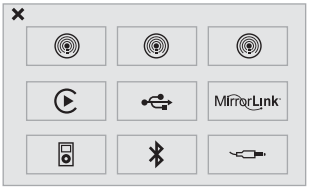
Use the buttons below the touch screen tablet for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).



In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.



Short-cuts: using the virtual buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).



Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB / AM* stations.
- USB memory stick.
- CD player (located in front panel).
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).
- Jukebox*, after first copying audio files to the internal memory of the system.





With the engine running, press to mute the sound.
With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.



Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

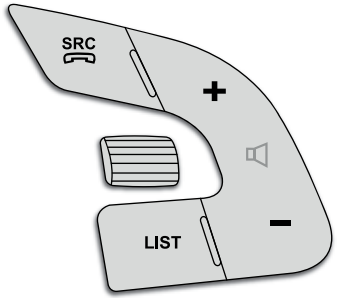
i In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

i The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

! To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls



SRC

Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start a call.
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than a call in progress, access to the telephone menu.

Radio, turn: automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media, turn: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

\+

Increase volume.

–

Decrease volume.

Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

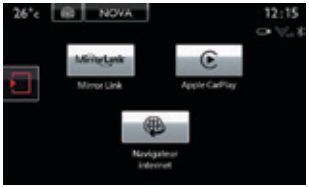
Settings



Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...), colour schemes and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

Connected services

(Depending on equipment)



Connect using the "Internet browser".
Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



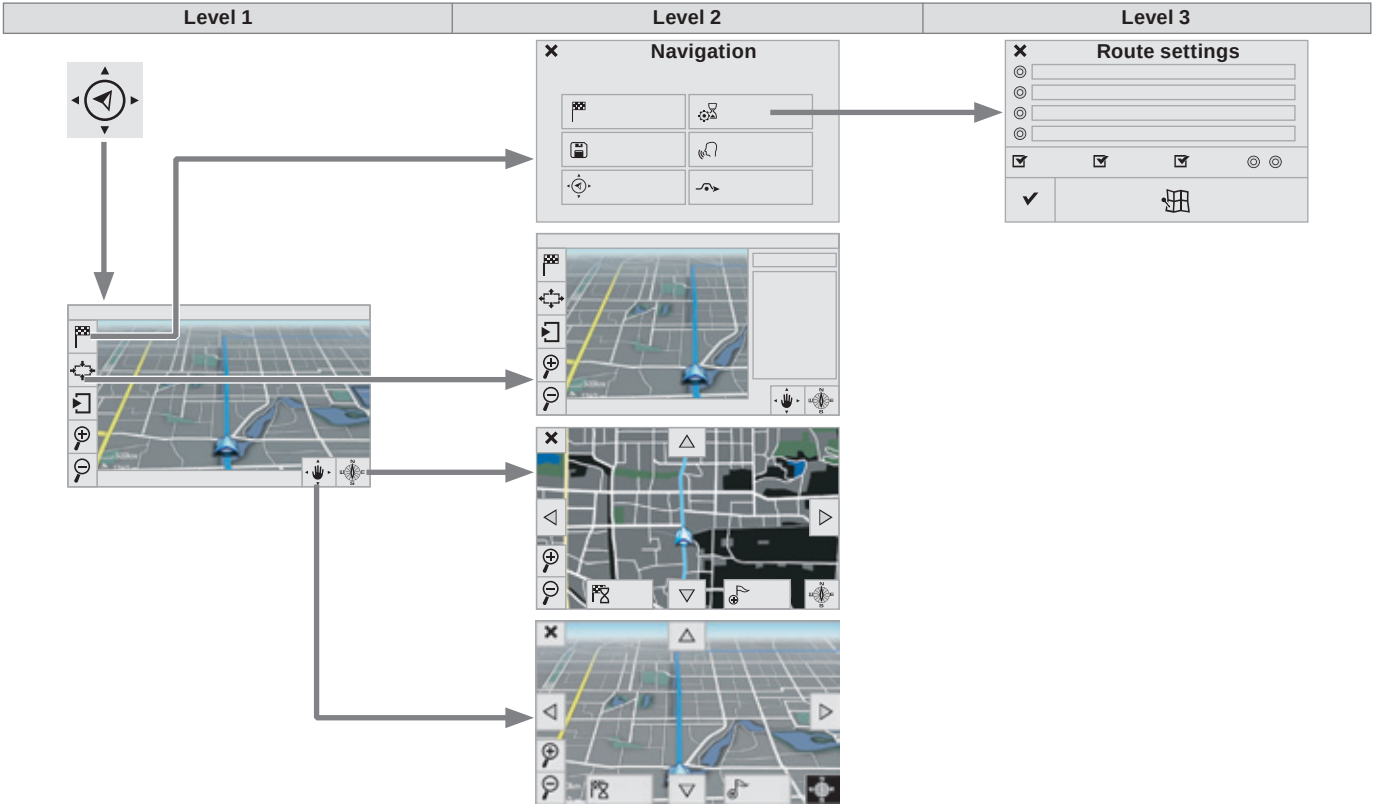
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

Driving

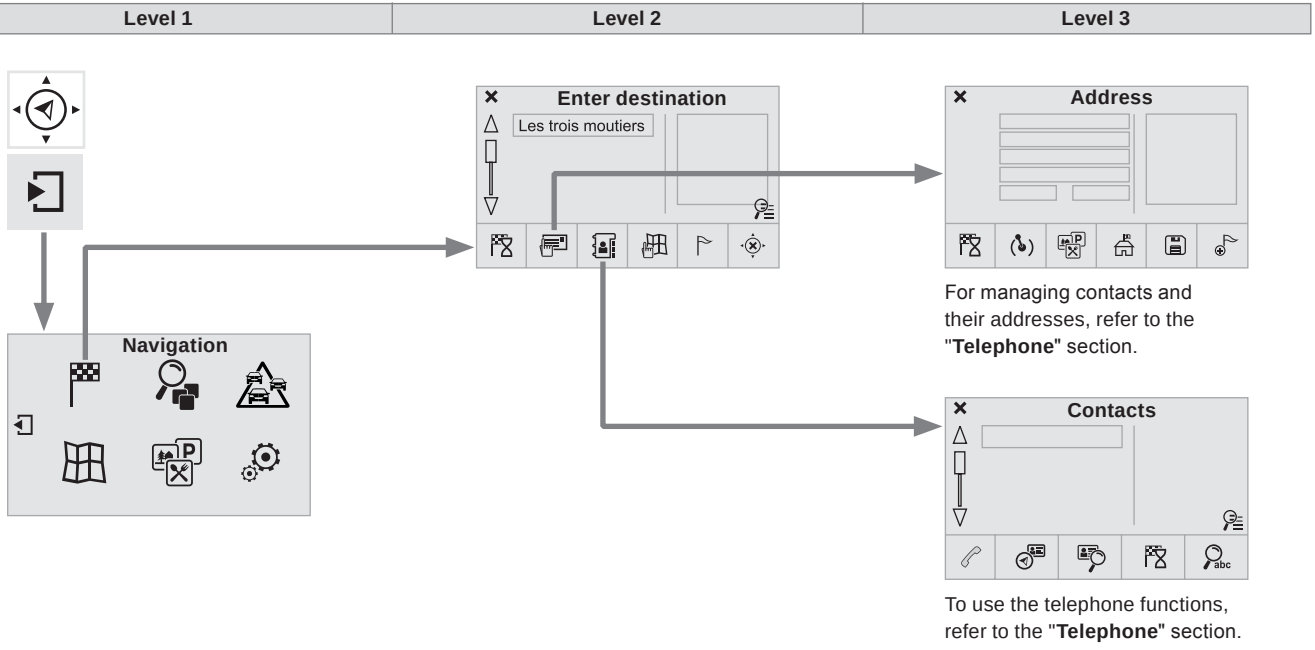


Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation

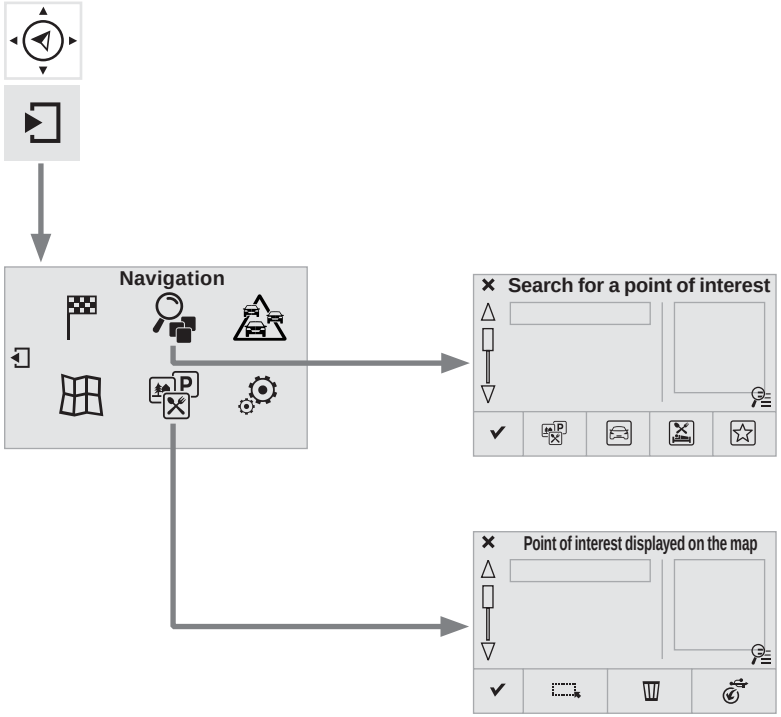


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		Enter destination			Display recent destinations
			Calculatory criteria		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
					✔ Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
						Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

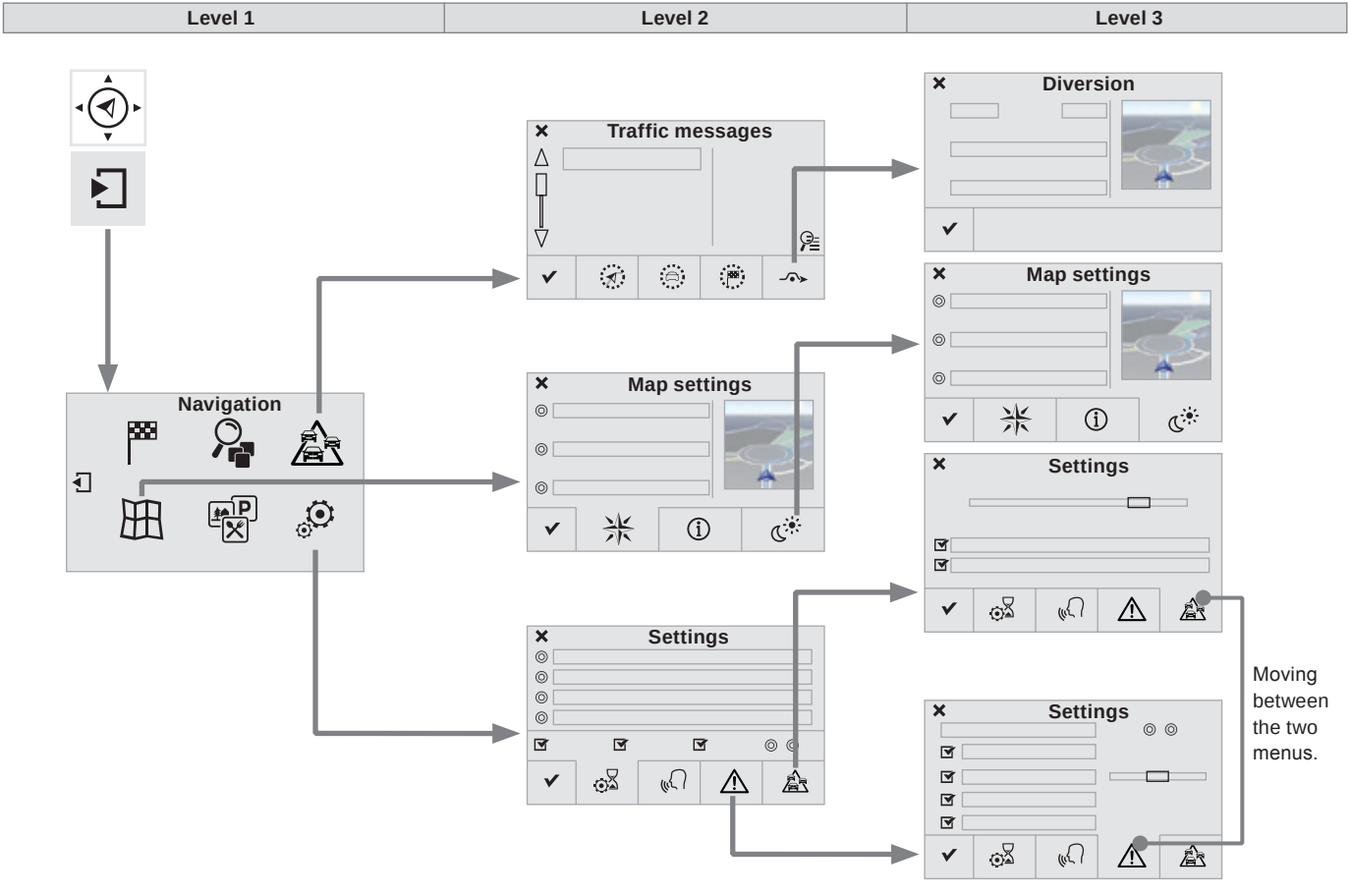

Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Enter destination
Les trois moutiers
Address
For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.
Contacts
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation Secondary page Enter destination		**Address**		Curr. location	Address settings
					Points of Interest	
					Town centre	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			From map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			Stop			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
  	**Navigation** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Search for POI**		**All POIs**		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			**Garage**		
			**Dining/hotels**		
			**Personal**		
		✔	**Search**		Save the settings.
  	**Navigation** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Show POIs**		**Select all**		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			**Delete**		
			**Import POIs**		
		✔	**Confirm**		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	◎ Detour over a distance	
		◎ Recalculate route	
	✔ Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings	Orientation	◎ Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		◎ Flat view vehicle heading	
		◎ Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	◎ "Day" map colour	
		◎ "Night" map colour	
		◎ Automatic day/night	
	✔ Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation → Secondary page → Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alert!		
	Traffic options		
	✔ Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Address**".



Select the "**Country:**" from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**". Confirm each time.

Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".

Choose the restriction criteria: "**Include tollroads**", "**Include ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".

Select "**Confirm**".

Or

Press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

To delete navigation information, press "**Settings**".

Press "**Stop navigation**".

To resume navigation press "**Settings**".

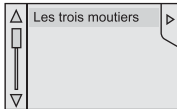
Press "**Resume navigation**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

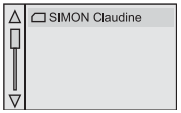
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**From map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**"

Or



"**Garage**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Hazard zone / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**".

It is then possible to activate Risk Areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk Area alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk Areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",

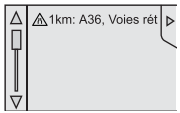


"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glasses to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Info options**".

Select:
- "**Warn of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

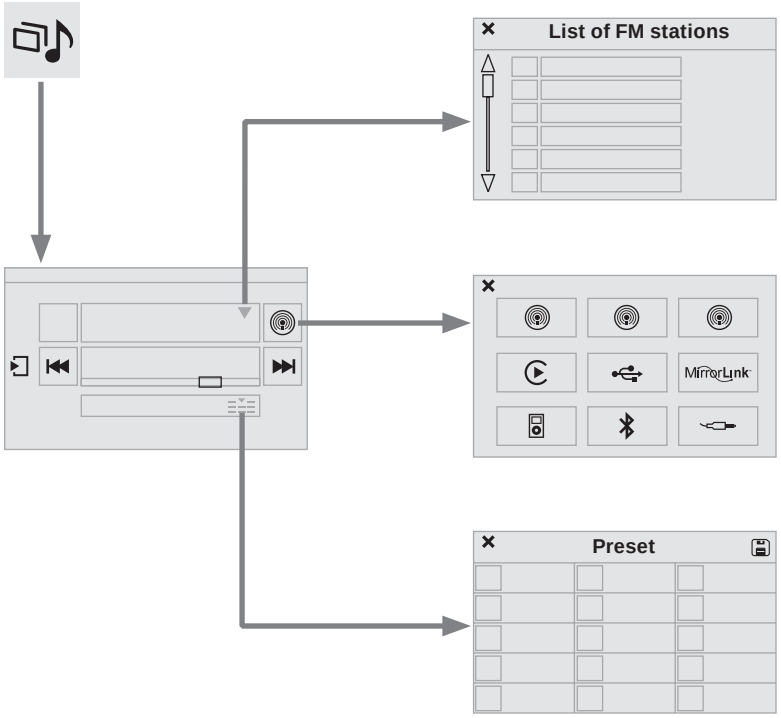
Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

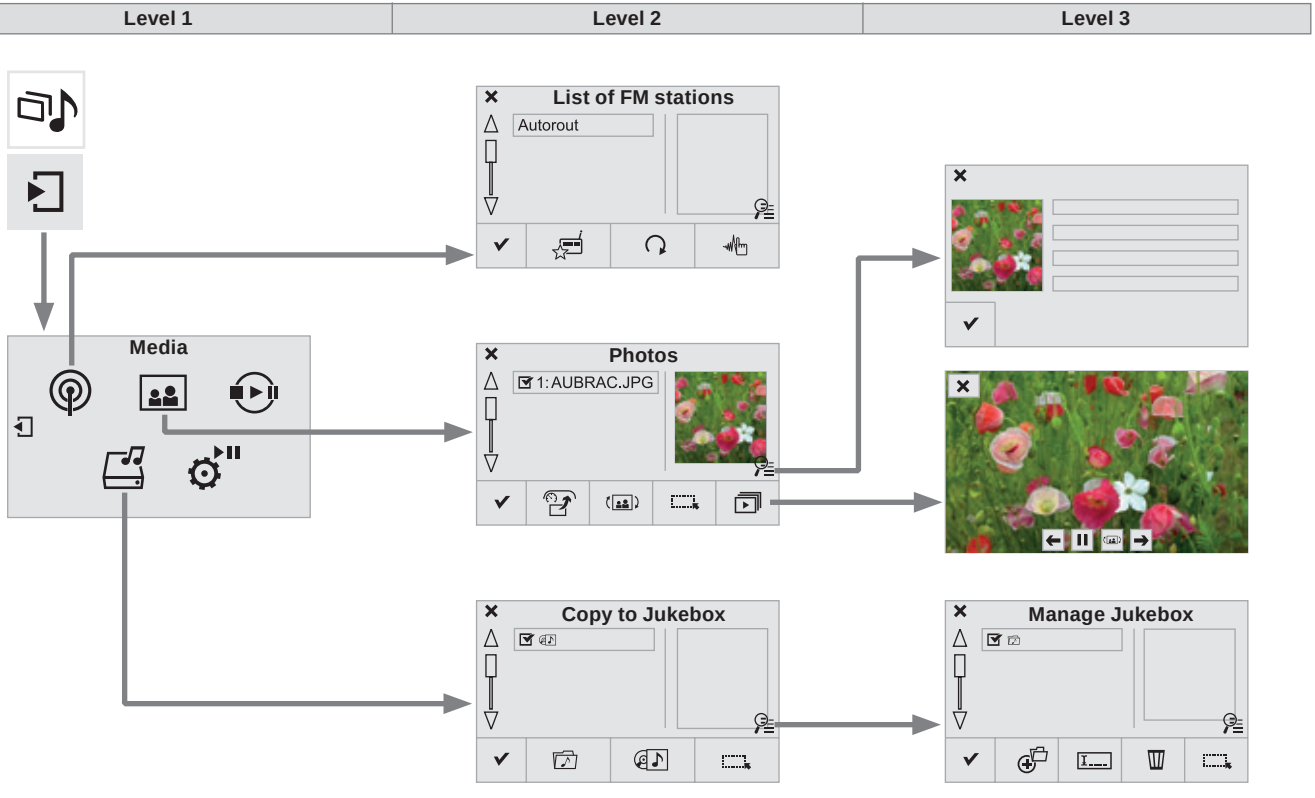
The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Radio Media

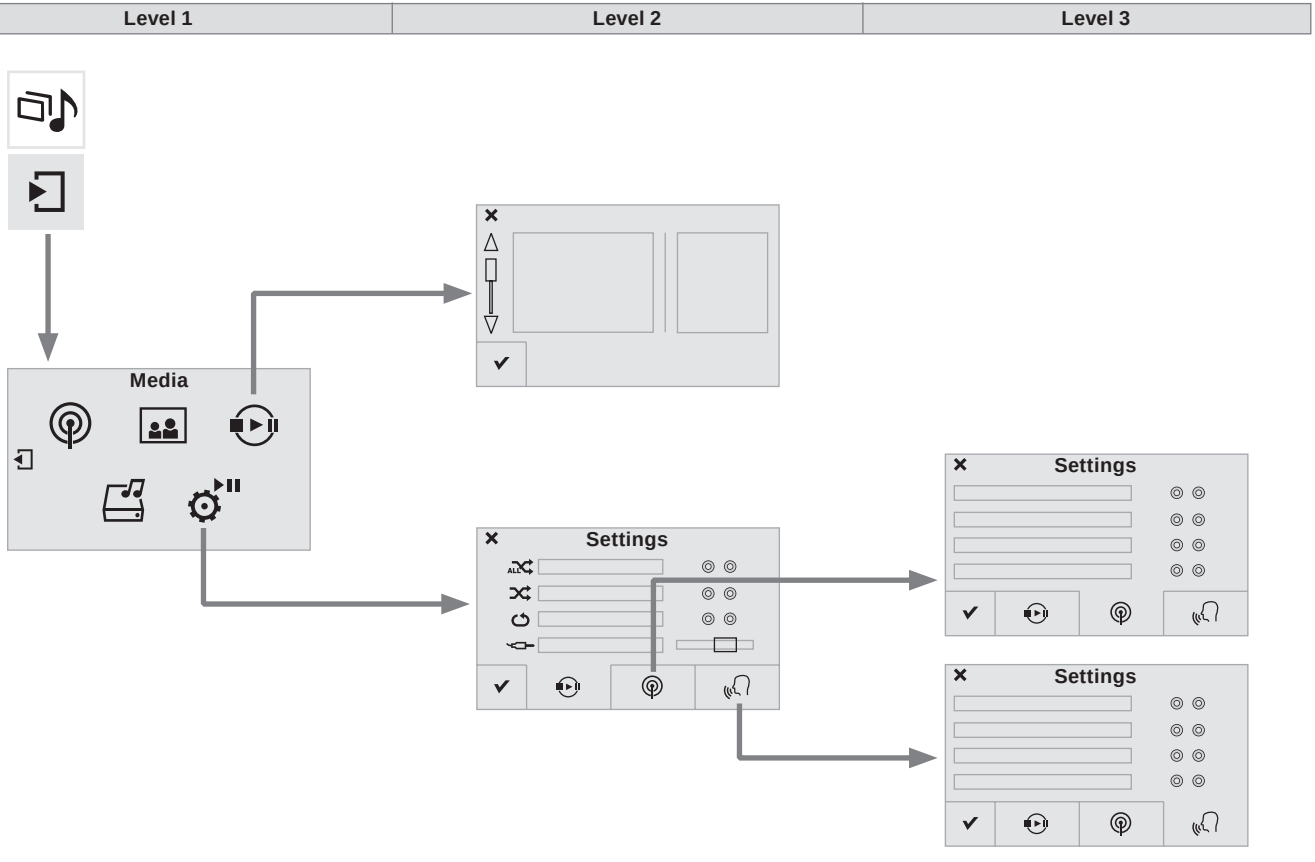
Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **List**	▼	**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	Radio Media ↓ **Source**	Radio FM	**FM Radio**	Select change of source
		Radio DAB	**DAB Radio**	
		Radio AM	**AM Radio**	
			USB	
			CD	
		MirrorLink	**MirrorLink™**	
			CarPlay®	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
			Jukebox	
	Radio Media ↓ **Preset**			Press an empty location to Preset it.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Media
List of FM stations
Autorout
Photos
1: AUBRAC.JPG
Copy to Jukebox
Manage Jukebox

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Radio Media → Secondary page → Radio list	Preset		Press a radio station to select it.
	Update list		Update the list of stations received.
	Frequency		Enter the desired radio frequency.
	Confirm		Save the settings.
Radio Media → Secondary page → Photos	Home screen		Display the selected photo in the home page.
	Rotate		Rotate the photo 90°.
	Select all		Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
	Slideshow	Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
		Pause / Play.	
		Next photo.	
	Full screen		Display the selected photo full-screen.
Radio Media → Secondary page → Manage Jukebox	Sort by folder		Choose a selection mode.
	Sort by album		
	Select all		
	Copy		Copy files to the Jukebox.
	Magnifying glass	Create folder	Choose the desired function.
		Rename	
		Delete	
		Select all	
		Confirm	Save the settings.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Media
Settings
Settings
Settings

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Settings**		**Media** ↓ **Settings**		Random (all tracks):	Choose the play settings.
					Random (current album):	
					Loop:	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio ↓ **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					DAB/FM options	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements ↓ **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					News - Weather	
					Sport - Programm info	
					Flash - Unforeseen events	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

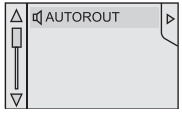
Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Preset**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.

If necessary, select change of source.

FM

Select "**FM Radio**".

Radio FM

Or

"**AM Radio**".

Radio AM

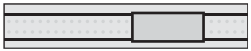
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN

FM

Select change source.

Radio FM

Select "**FM Radio**".

Or

Radio AM

"**AM Radio**".

OR



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Press on **Frequency**.

THEN



Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.

To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Preset a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).



Press on "**Preset**".

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.

A long press on a number presets (memorises) the station.

Or



A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recall pre-set stations



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select "**Settings**".

Activate/ Deactivate RDS



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



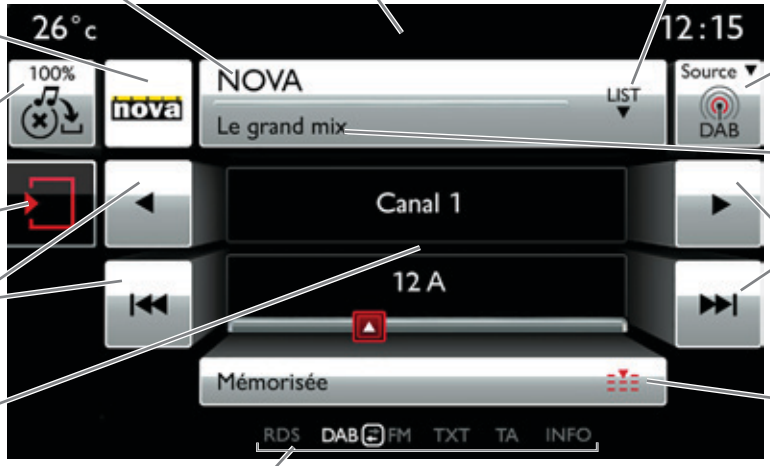
Select "**Radio**".



Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Manage the Jukebox. Display current action.

Secondary page.

Previous "Multiplex". Previous radio station.

Display the name and number of the multiplex service being used.

Select the audio source. Display the "DAB" band.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Next "Multiplex". Next radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15. Short press: select the preset radio station. Long press: preset a radio station.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

NewsService Journaline®

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or



Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**RADIO**".



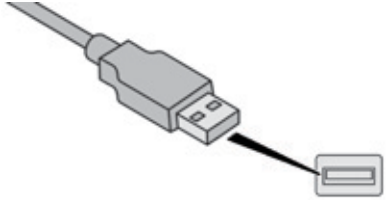
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

i If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

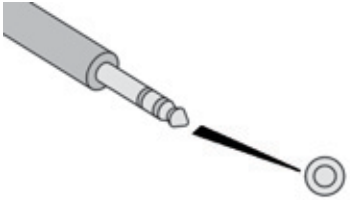
USB player



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

Insert the CD in the player.

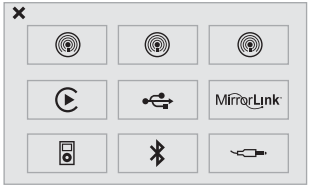
Selecting the source



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Choose the source.



The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.



Press **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and. mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, ...) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g.: " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (file allocation table).

! The system does not support the simultaneous connection of two identical devices (two memory sticks, two Apple® players) but it is possible to connect one memory stick and one Apple® player at the same time.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

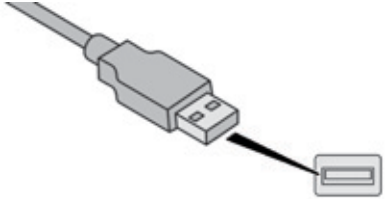
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Managing the Jukebox

Connect the device (MP3 player...) to the USB port or auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable audio cable.

When no audio file is copied to the system, which has a capacity of 8 GB, all of the Jukebox function symbols are greyed and are not available.



Select "**Media list**".



Select copy "**Copy Jukebox**".



Select "**Sort by folder**".

Or



"**Sort by album**".



Select the magnifying glass to enter the folder or album and select audio file by audio file.



Select "**Confirm**" then "**Copy**".



Select "**New folder**" to create a folder structure in the Jukebox.

Or



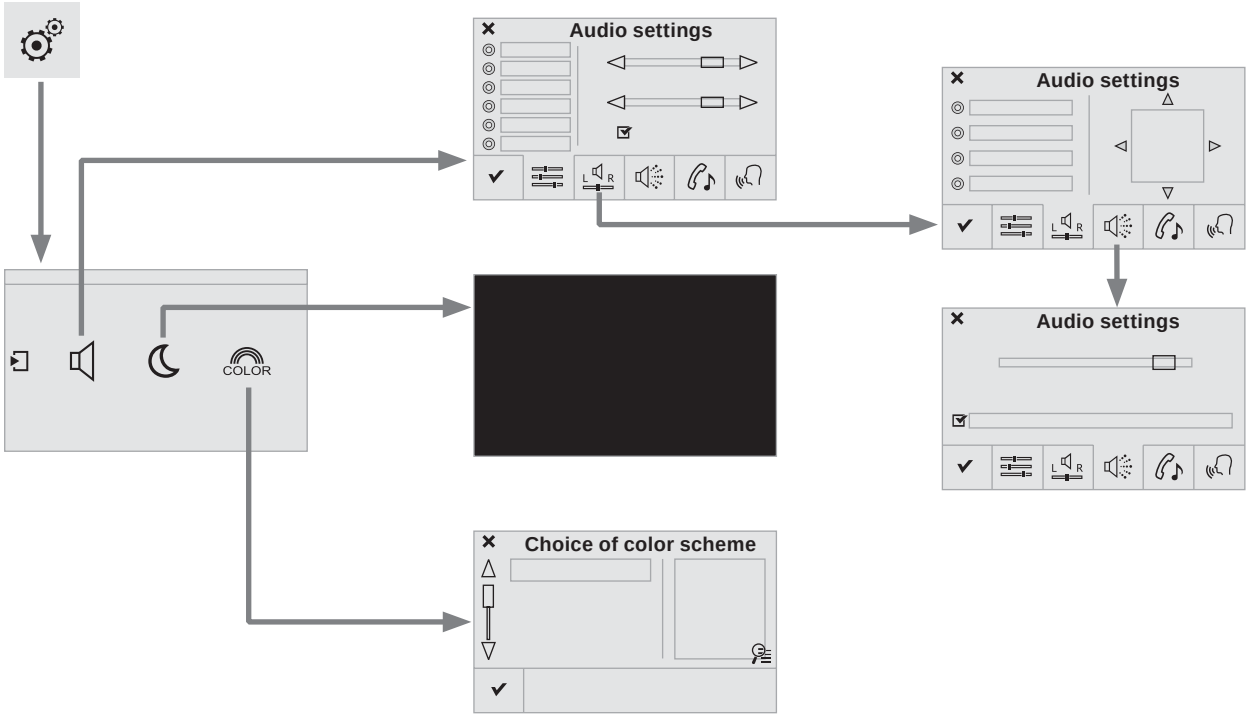
Select "**Keep structure**" to retain the structure from the device.



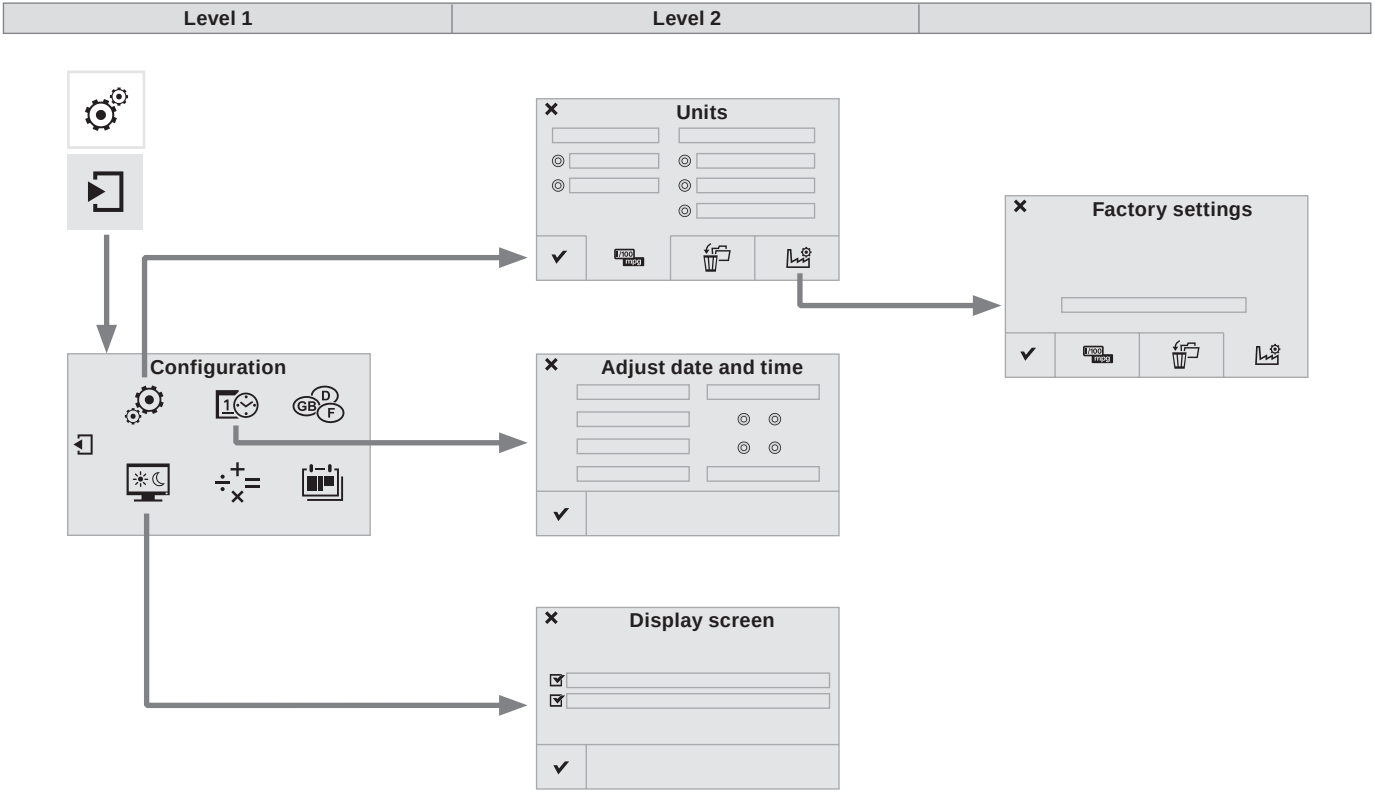
While copying the system returns to the primary page; you can go back to the copy view at any time by selecting this button.

Settings

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

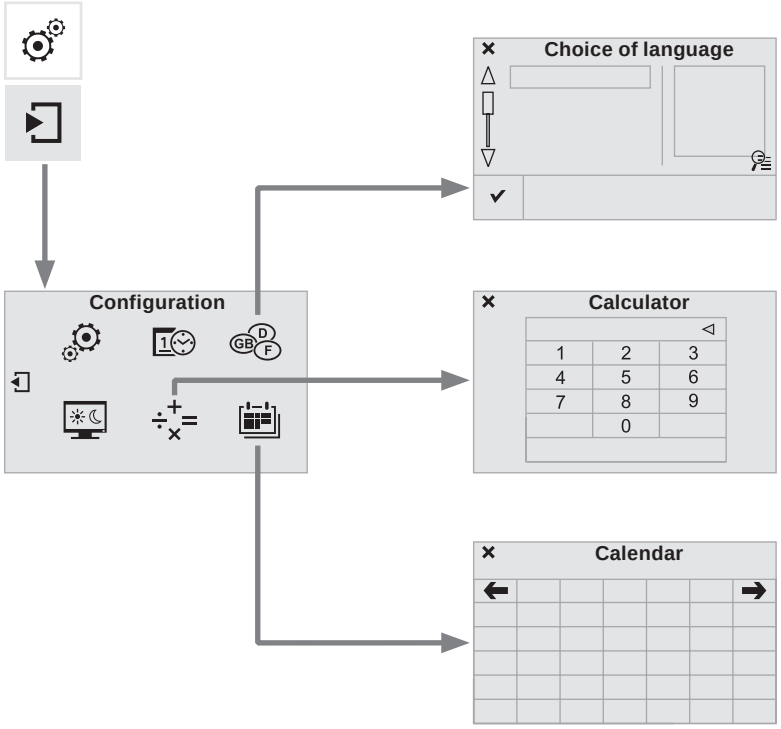


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
	Settings → Audio settings		Ambience		Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance		Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects		Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones		Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice		Set the volume and voice for speaking street names
		✔	Confirm		Save your settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen				Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
	Settings → Color schemes	✔	Confirm		Choose the color scheme, then confirm to save the setting.


Level 1
Level 2
Units
Factory settings
Configuration
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings Secondary page System settings		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Settings Secondary page Time/Date	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings Secondary page Screen settings		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Languages**	✔	**Confirm**	Select the language then confirm.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calculator**			Select the calculator.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calendar**			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass**, **Treble** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **F-R balance** and **L-R balance** are common to all sources.

- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass**"
- "**Treble**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Balance**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to vehicle speed:**" (Activate/Deactivate)

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

Color schemes



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select the color scheme in the list then "**Confirm**".

At each change of color scheme the system restarts, showing a black screen for a few moments.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on "**Settings**" to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.



Select "**Languages**" to change language.



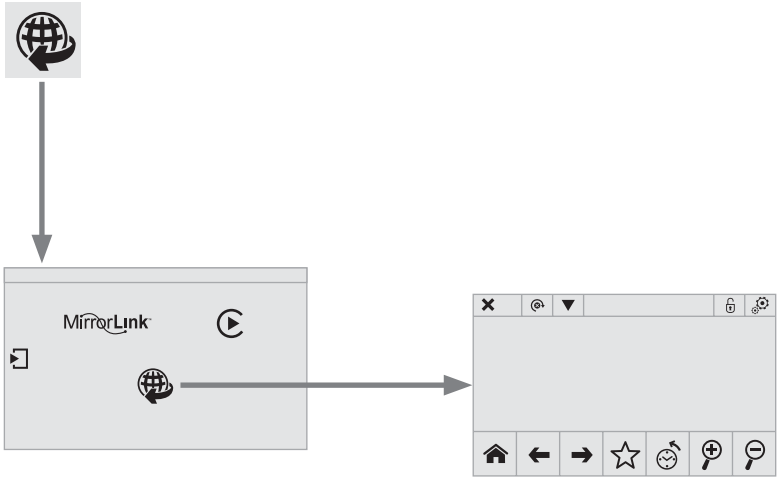
Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Internet browser



Press on **Connected services** to display the primary page.

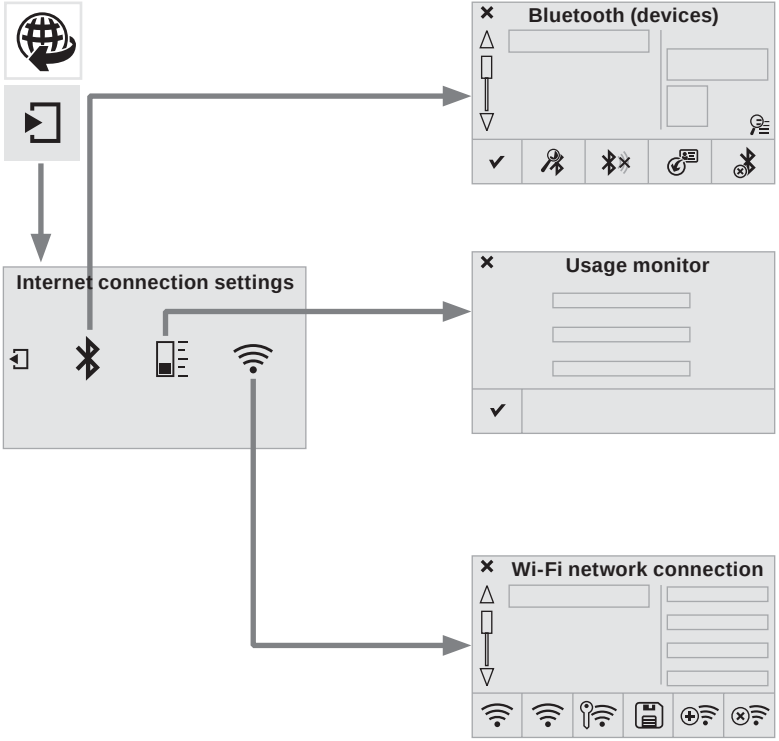


Press on "**Internet browser**" to displays the browser's home page; first connect your smartphone by Bluetooth, option "Internet", see the "**Telephone**" section.

Authentication for Internet browsing via a smartphone is done using the Dial-Up Networking (DUN) standard.

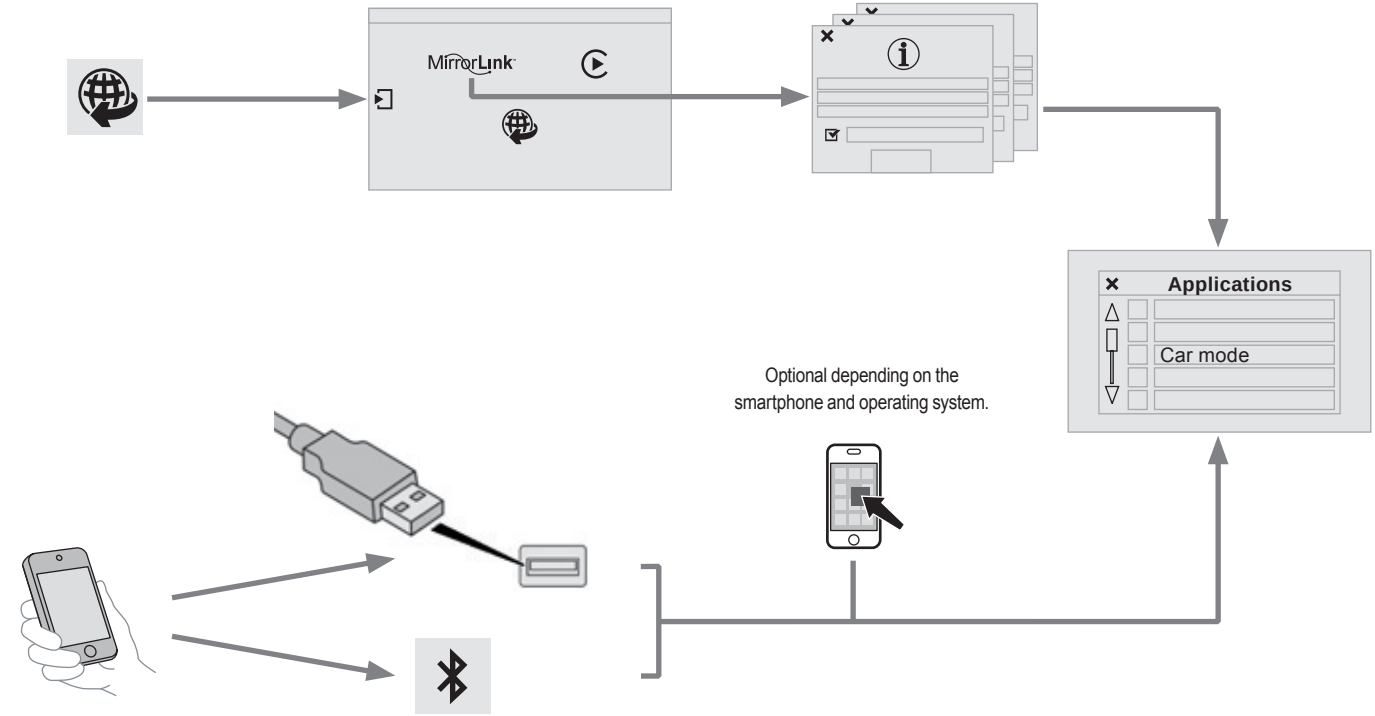
Some smartphones of the latest generation do not support this standard.

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Connected services ↓ Secondary page ↓ Bluetooth connection		**Search**	Start the search for a device to connect.
			**Connect / Disconnect**	Start or end the Bluetooth connection to the selected device.
			**Update**	Import contacts from the selected telephone to save them in the audio system.
			**Delete**	Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Connected services ↓ Secondary page ↓ Transfer rate		**Reset**	Reset the usage monitor, them confirm.
		✔	**Confirm**	
	Connected services ↓ Secondary page ↓ WiFi connection		**All**	Display all Wi-Fi networks.
			**Secure**	Display secure Wi-Fi networks.
			**Stored**	Memorise the selected Wi-Fi network(s).
			**Add**	Add a new Wi-Fi network.
			**Off/ On**	Activate or deactivate a Wi-Fi network.
			**Connect**	Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it.

MirrorLink™


MirrorLink
Applications
Car mode
Optional depending on the
smartphone and operating system.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

MirrorLink™ Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.



Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

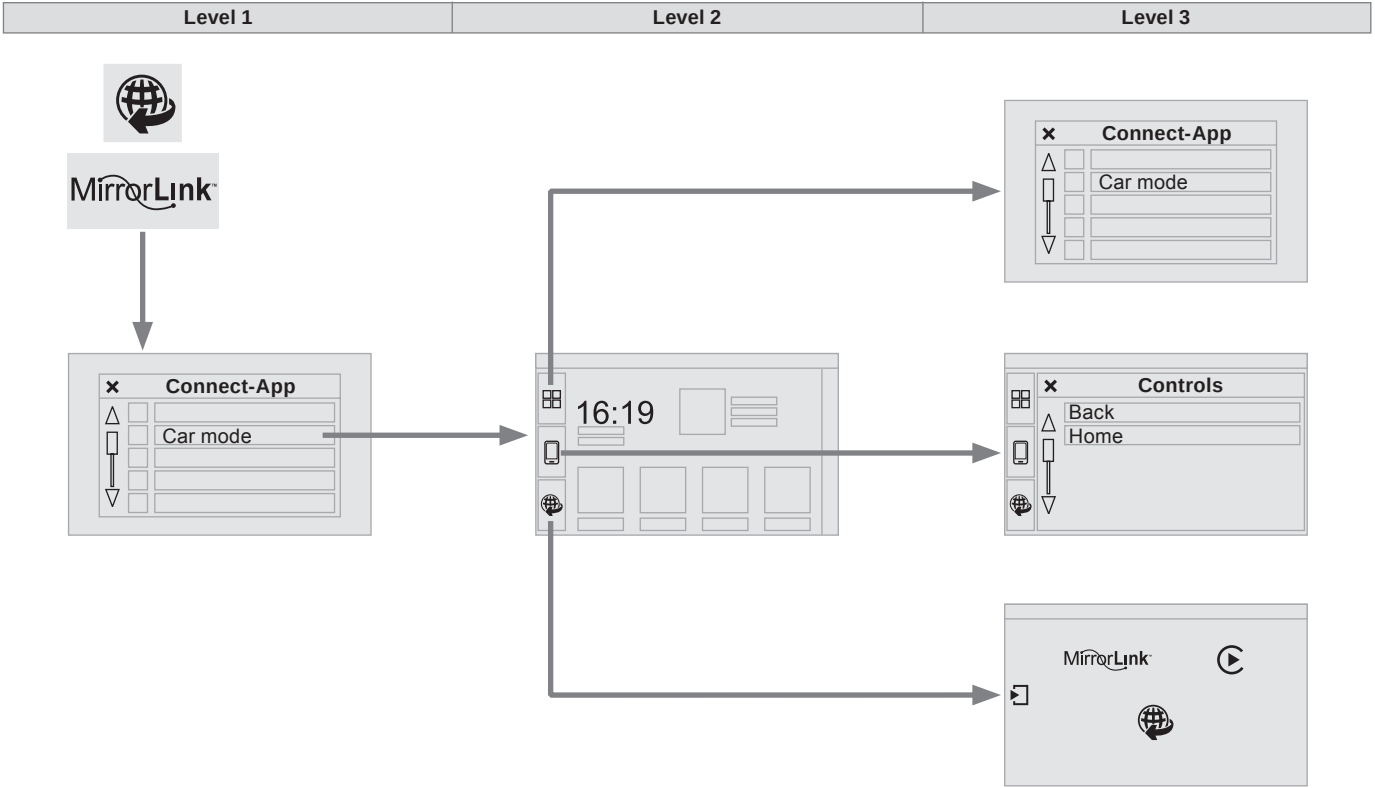
Once connection is established, an "**Applications**" page is displayed with the list of applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

If the smartphone is locked, communication with the system is only by USB cable.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

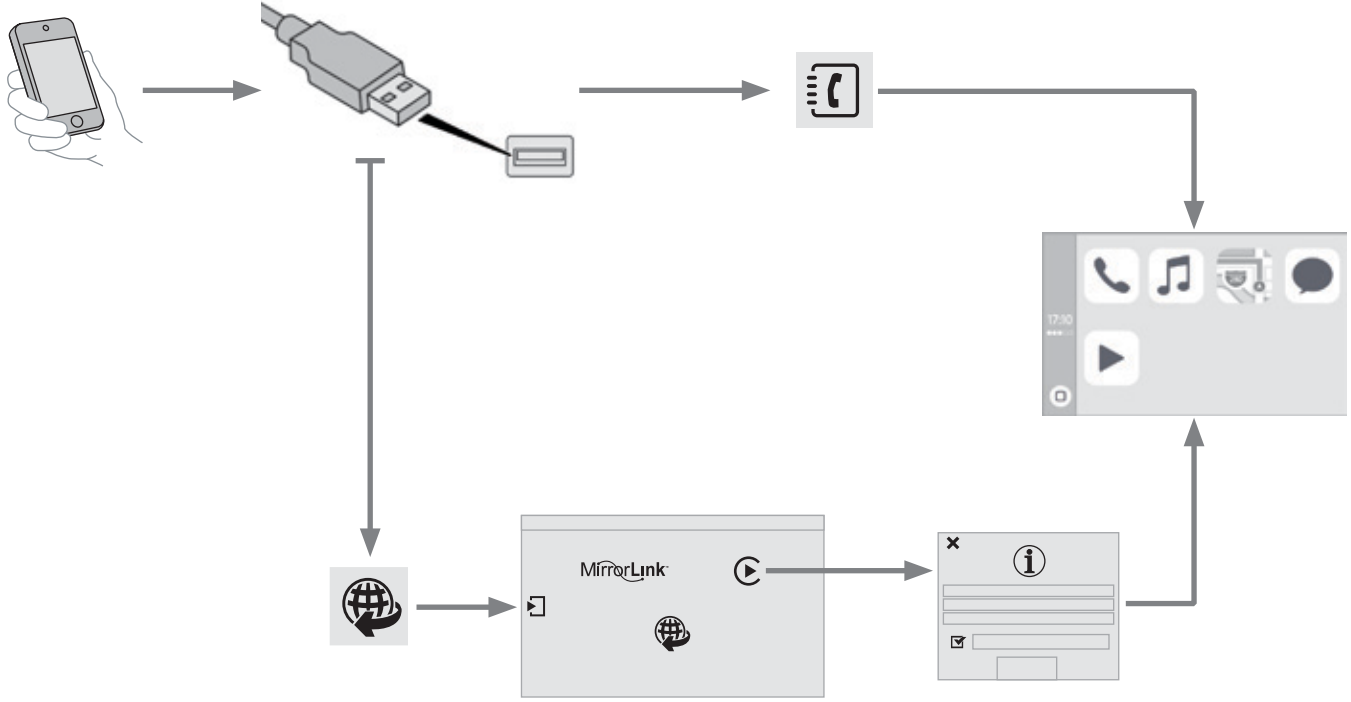
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
Connect-App
Car mode
16:19
Connect-App
Car mode
Controls
Back
Home
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
 	Connected services ↓ MirrorLink™ ↓ Connect-App		Car mode		**Connect-App**	Access or return to the list of applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
					**Controls**	"Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



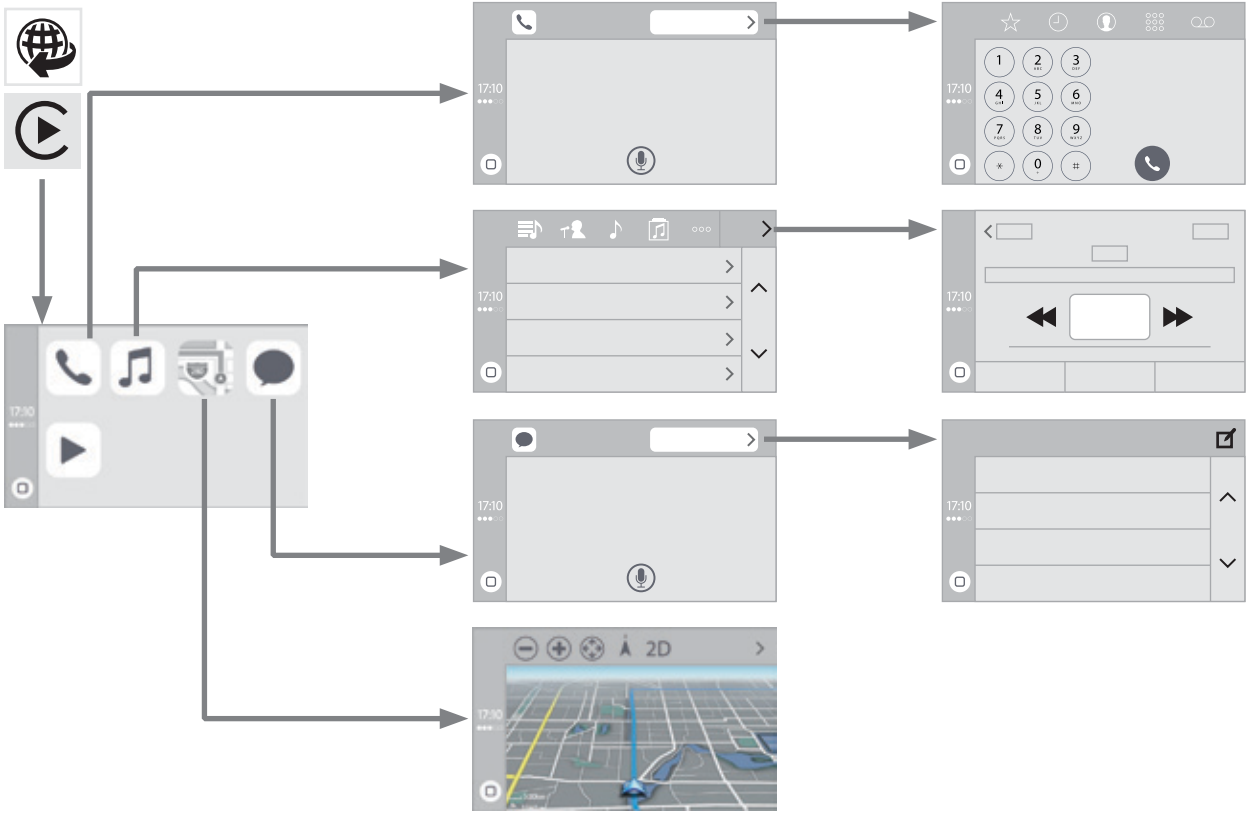
Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

Voice recognition

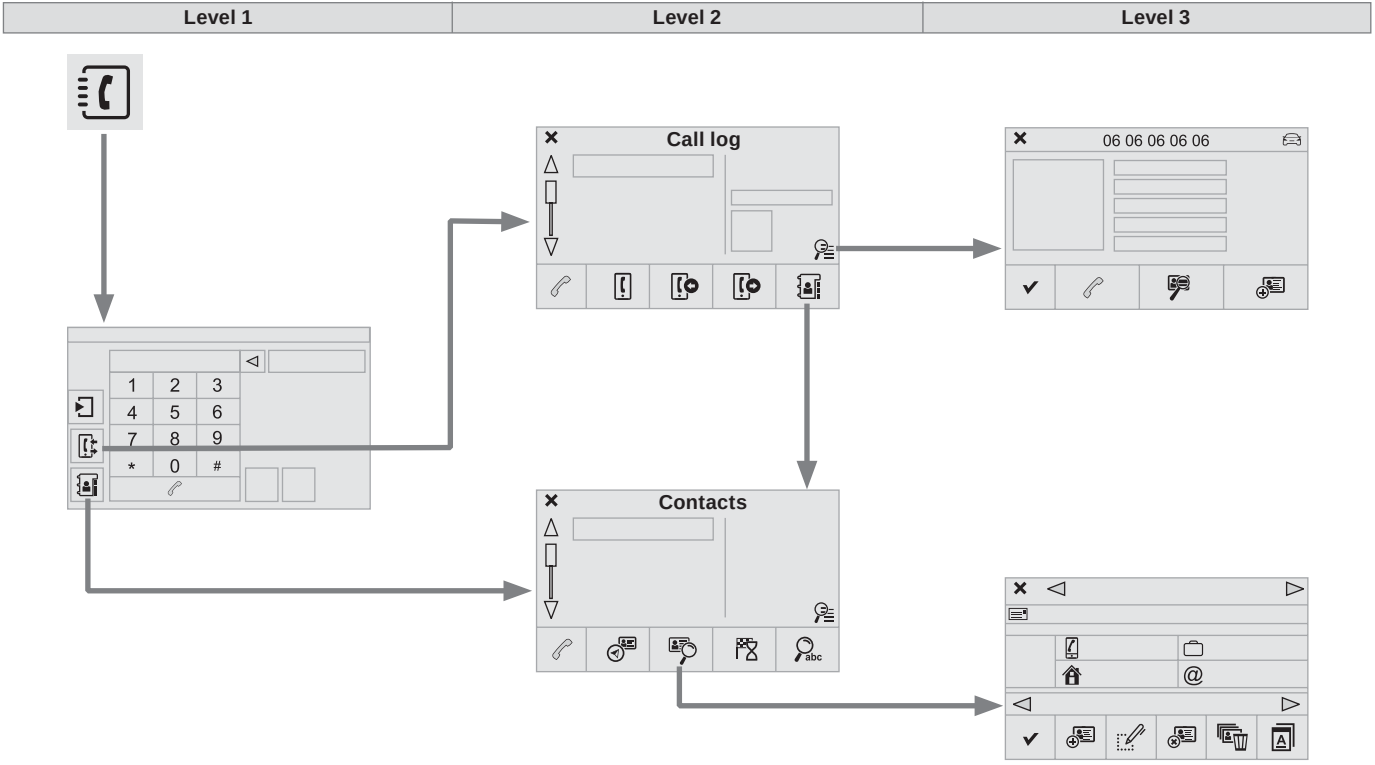
Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

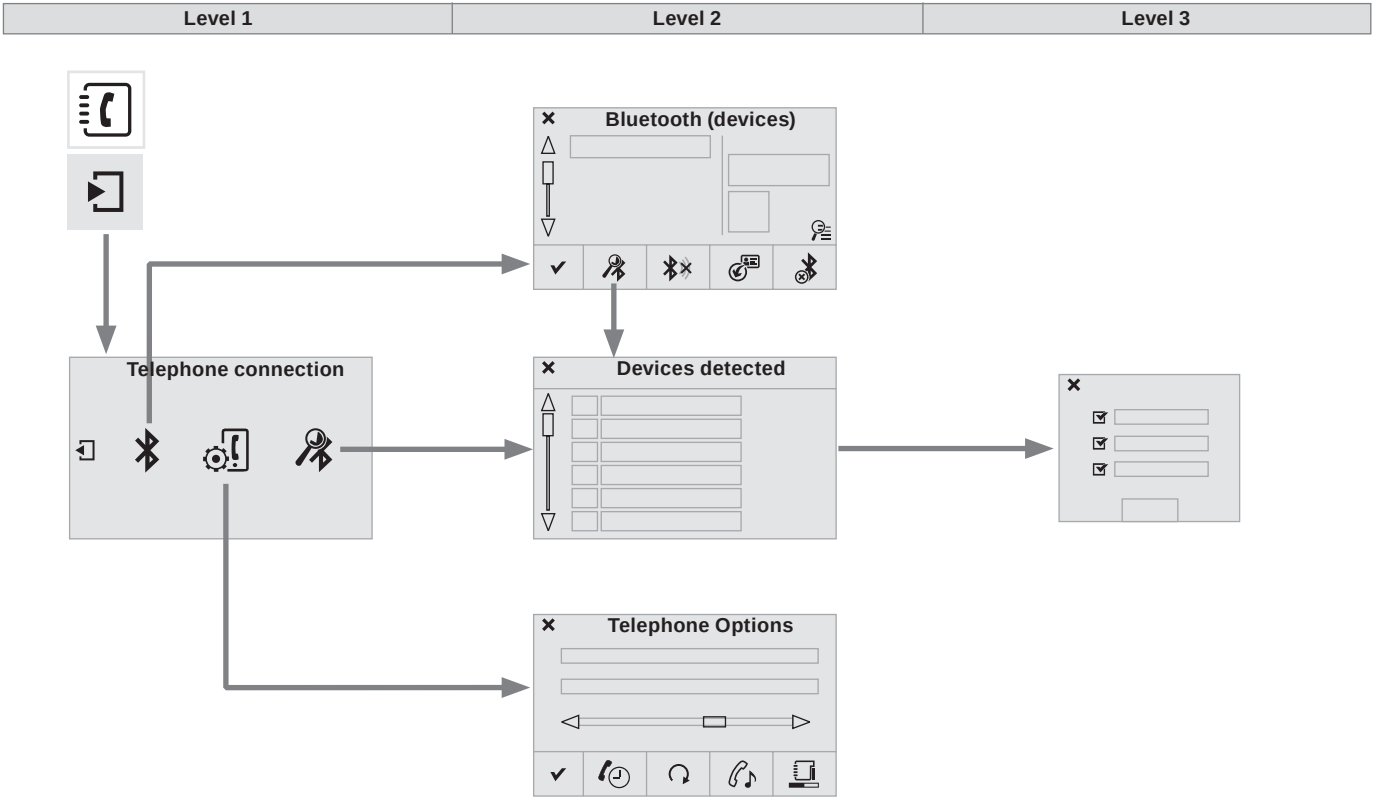


Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ Apple® CarPlay®		Telephone	☆	Favourites	The "Telephone" function is placed automatically in "Siri" voice mode. Press on "Display contacts" for access to the telephone menus.
					Calls	
					Contacts	
					Keypad	
					Messages	
			Music		Lists	Press on "Music" to browse and select the tracks on your smartphone. Press on "Playing" for access to the track currently playing.
					Artists	
					Tracks	
					Albums	
					Other...	
			Plan	›	Destinations	Press on "Destinations" to search for an address by "Siri" voice command or by using the keypad. The GPS function is through the telephone's 3G, 4G or Wi-Fi internet connection.
			Messages	›	Display messages	The "Messages" function is place automatically in "Siri" voice mode to speak the message and the addressee. Press on "Display messages" for access to the messages.
			Playing			Access to the track currently playing.

Telephone


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Call log
06 06 06 06 06
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
Contacts
abc

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		New	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Bluetooth (devices)
Telephone connection
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth connection		Search			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			Connect /Disconnect			Start or stop the Bluetooth connection to the selected peripheral device.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			Delete			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			Devices detected	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone options		Put on hold			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			Update			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
			Ringtones			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Memory info.			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth contacts.
		✔	Confirm			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select **Search**.
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Managing contacts / entries



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Hazard zone audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings.
I receive an Accident-prone area alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Hazard zones positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for a Hazard zone located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Accident-prone area. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the "Geographic filter" settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, ...). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. - The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. - Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of the correct quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

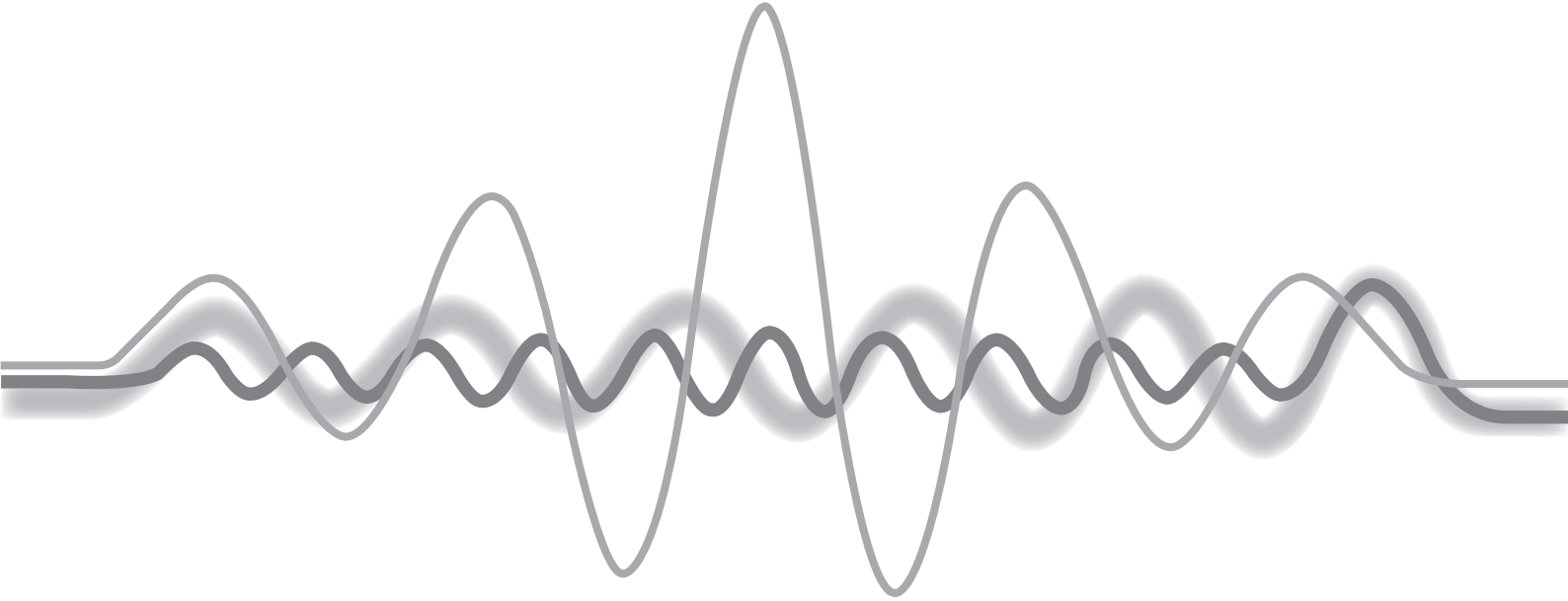
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer and Loudness can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings for (Volume, Bass, Treble, Equalizer, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the Audio functions (Bass, Treble, Fr-Re balance, Le-Ri balance) to the middle position, select the "Linear", musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	- Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. - Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	



Audio system / Bluetooth®



Contents

First steps	354
Steering mounted controls	355
Menus	356
Radio	357
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	359
Media	361
Telephone	366
Audio settings	373
Screen menu map(s)	374
Frequently asked questions	377

The system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

As a safety measure, the driver must only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. When the engine is switched off and to prevent discharging of the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes.

First steps



On / Off.

Volume adjustment.

Audio settings:
audio ambiences, treble, bass, loudness, distribution, left/right balance, front/rear fader, automatic volume.

1 Select preset radio station.
Long press: store a station.

LIST Display the list of stations received, CD/MP3 tracks or folders.
Long press: managing the classification of MP3/WMA files / update the list of stations received.

TA INFO TA (Traffic Announcement) function On / Off.
Long press: access to type of information.

MENU Access to main menu.

SOURCE Select source:
Radio, CD, AUX, USB, Streaming.
Accept an incoming call.

OK Confirmation or display of contextual menu.

▲ ▼ Manual step by step search up / down for radio frequencies.
Select previous / next MP3 folder.
Select previous / next folder / genre / artist / playlist in the USB device.
Navigation in a list.

◀◀ ▶▶ Automatic search up / down for radio frequencies.
Select previous / next CD, USB, streaming track.
Navigation in a list.

Abandon the current operation.
Up one level (menu or folder).

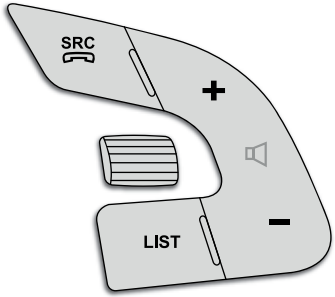
Select screen display between modes:
Full screen: Audio
(or telephone if call in progress) /
In a window: Audio (or telephone if call in progress) - Time or Trip computer.
Long press: black screen (DARK).

BAND Selection of FM / DAB / AM* wavebands.

* Depending on model.

Steering mounted controls

Audio / Bluetooth telephone system



SRC Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start a call.
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than call in progress, access to the telephone menu.

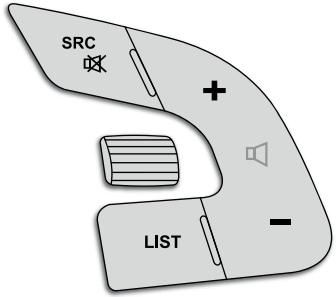
Radio, rotate: automatic search for previous / next station.
Media, rotate: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

+ Increase volume.

– Decrease volume.

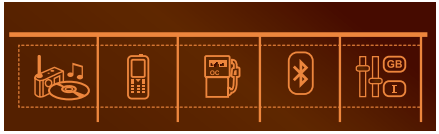
Audio system



SRC Media: change the multimedia source.
Press and hold: mute / restore sound.

Menus

Screen C



"**Multimedia**": Media parameters, Radio parameters.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Trip computer**": Warning log.

"**Bluetooth connection**": Connections management, Search for a device.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

Screen A



For a detailed global view of the menus available, refer to "Screen menu map" section.

Radio

Selecting a station

! The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

SOURCE Press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select radio.

BAND Press **BAND** to select a waveband.

LIST Press **LIST** to display the list of stations received in alphabetical order.

▲ ▼ Select the desired radio station and confirm by pressing **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ A press changes to the next or previous letter (e.g. A, B, D, F, G, J, K, ...).

LIST A long press on **LIST** builds or updates the list of stations; audio reception is cut momentarily.

RDS

i RDS, if displayed, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

OK When the radio is displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

OK Select "**RDS**" and confirm to save. "**RDS**" is displayed in the screen.

Receiving TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

TA INFO

Press **TA INFO** to activate or deactivate the reception of traffic messages.

Receiving INFO messages

The INFO function gives priority to TA alert messages. To be active, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (Radio, CD, USB, ...) is interrupted automatically to receive the INFO message. Normal play resumes at the end of the message transmission.

TA INFO

Make a long press on **TA INFO** to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼

Select or deselect categories to activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Display RADIO TEXT

Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the current programme or song.

Screen C

OK

With the radio displayed on the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼

Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

Screen A

OK

Select "**MEDIA**" and confirm.

◀◀ ▶▶

Then select "**TEXT INFO**" and press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to select "**ON**" or "**OFF**" and confirm to save the modifications.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Display options:
if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", "DAB FM" is struck out.



Display the name of the current station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name of the multiplex service being used.

Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

Display of RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex services" offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND — Change band (FM1, FM2, DAB, ...)

◀◀ ▶▶ — Change of station within the same "multiplex service".

▲ ▼ — Start a search for the next "multiplex service".

TA INFO — Long press: select the desired categories of announcements from Transport, News, Entertainment and Flash special (availability according to the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press on "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency hopping (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, ...)

DAB / FM tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue "FM" station (if it exists).

MENU — Press the "**Menu**" button.

◀◀ ▶▶ — Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

▲ ▼ — Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" is on, there will be a difference of a few seconds in the programme when the system changes to analogue "FM" radio, with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the strength of the digital signal is good again, the system automatically switches back to "DAB"

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option barred), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not on, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

Audio CD

Playing a CD

Insert 12 cm diameter circular compact discs only.
Some anti-pirating systems, on original discs or CDs copied using a personal recorder, may cause faults which are no reflection on the quality of the original player.
Without pressing the **EJECT** button, insert a CD in the player, play begins automatically.

SOURCE

To play a disc which has already been inserted, press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**CD**".



Press one of the buttons to select a track on the CD.

LIST

Press **LIST** to display the list of tracks on the CD.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forward or backward.

CD, USB

Information and advice

The audio system will only play files with extension ".mp3" or ".wma" and a compression rate that is constant or variable between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters without using special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing or displaying problems.

The playlists accepted are types .m3u and .pls. The number of files is limited to 5 000 in 500 directories on a maximum of 8 levels.

! On a single disc, the CD player can read up to 255 MP3 files spread over 8 directory levels. However, it is recommended that this be kept to 2 levels so as to limit the time taken to access and play the CD.
During play, the folder structure is not observed.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select standards ISO 9660 level 1.2 or Joliet.
If the disc is recorded in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

! Do not connect a hard disk or USB device other than audio players to the USB port. This may cause damage to your installation.

CD, USB

Playing a compilation

! Insert an MP3 compilation in the CD player or connect a memory stick to the USB port, directly or via an extension lead.

The system creates playlists (temporary memory) the creation time for which can take from a few seconds to several minutes.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected.
Play starts automatically after a period which depends on the capacity of the USB memory stick.

At a first connection, the order suggested is by folder. When connecting again, the order previously chosen is retained.



To play a disc or memory stick which has already been inserted, press **SOURCE** or **SRC** several times in succession and select "**CD**" or "**USB**".



Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous track.



Press one of the buttons to select the next or previous folder in the order chosen.



Press and hold one of the buttons for fast forwards or backwards.



Press **LIST** to display the menu of folders in the compilation.



Select a line in the list.



Select a track or a folder.



Up a level in the menu.



Skip a track.

USB memory stick - File sorting

LIST

Make a long press on **LIST** or press **MENU**, select "**Multimedia**", then "**Media parameters**" and finally "**Choice of track listing**" to display the different types of sorting.

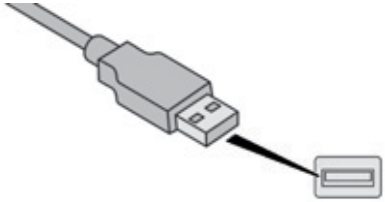
▲ ▼

OK

Having selected the desired sorting ("**By folders**", "**By artists**", "**By genres**", "**By playlists**") press **OK**. Then confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

- **By folders**: all folders containing audio files recognised on the peripheral device, in alphabetical order without following the folder structure.
- **By artists**: all of the artist names defined in the ID3 Tags, in alphabetical order.
- **By genres**: all of the genres defined in the ID3 Tags.
- **By playlists**: if playlists have been saved.

USB players



The audio files on a Mass Storage portable player* can be heard through the vehicle's speakers by connecting it to the USB port (cable not supplied).

Management of the device is via the audio system controls.

If the portable player is not recognised by the USB port, connect it to the auxiliary Jack socket.

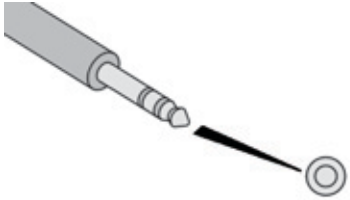
The Apple® player must be updated regularly for the best connection.

The playlists are those defined in the Apple® player.

The Apple® player must be generation 5 or later.

* Check your player's manual.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



The auxiliary Jack socket permits the connection of a portable non-mass storage device or an Apple® player if not recognised by the USB port.

! Do not connect a device to the USB port and to the auxiliary Jack socket at the same time.

Connect the portable device to the auxiliary Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

SOURCE Press the **SOURCE** or **SRC** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device.

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

The display and management of controls is on the portable device.

Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

Depending on the compatibility of the phone

Streaming allows music files on a telephone to be heard via the vehicle's speakers.
The telephone must support the appropriate Bluetooth profiles (Profiles A2DP / AVRCP).

Pair/connect the telephone: see the "USING THE TELEPHONE" section.

SOURCE Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE** or **SRC**. Control of playback is via the audio system. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen.

! In certain cases, playing of the audio files must be initiated from the telephone.

The audio quality depends on the quality of the transmission from the telephone.

Play mode

! The play modes available are:
- Normal: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- Random: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- Random all: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- Repeat: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

MENU

Press **OK** for access to the contextual menu.
or
Press **MENU**.



Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

OK



Select "**Media parameters**" and confirm.

OK



Select "**Read mode**" and confirm.

OK



Select the desired play mode and confirm **OK** to save the modifications.

OK

Telephone

Pairing a telephone
First connection

The services offered depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.
Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (refer to the telephone user guide).



Press **MENU**.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.





Select "**Search for a device**".



A window is displayed "**Search in progress...**".



Select the telephone to be connected from the list. Only one telephone can be connected at a time.



In some cases, the reference number of the telephone or the Bluetooth address may appear instead of the name of the telephone.



A virtual keypad is displayed on the screen: enter a code with at least 4 digits and conform with **OK**.



A message is displayed on the screen of the telephone: enter the same code and confirm.

If pairing fails, try again; the number of attempts is not limited.

Accept the connection to the telephone.

A message appears in the screen to confirm successful connection.

! Pairing can also be initiated from the telephone by searching for detected Bluetooth devices.

The directory and the calls list can be accessed after the synchronisation period (if the telephone is compatible). Automatic connection must be configured in the telephone to allow the connection each time the vehicle is started.

Streaming - Playing audio files via Bluetooth

Pair/connect the telephone then play the files: see the "Pairing" section.

Managing connections

The telephone connection automatically includes hands free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU

Press **MENU**.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" and confirm.

OK



Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired telephones is displayed.

OK



Indicates that a device is connected.



Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.



Indicates connection of the hands-free profile.



Select a telephone and confirm.

OK

Making a call - Dialling



Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**" / "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect / disconnect the telephone or the hands-free connection only.
- "**Connect media player**" / "**Disconnect media player**": to connect / disconnect only streaming.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**" / "**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect / disconnect the telephone (hands-free and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.



To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:

- Make along press on **SOURCE** or **SRC**.
- Or, press **OK** to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.



Select "**Dial**" to enter a number and confirm.



Select numbers one at a time using the ◀◀ and ▶▶ buttons and confirm.

Correction allows numbers to be deleted one at a time.



Select **OK** and confirm to start the call.

Making a call - Recently called numbers*

SOURCE

To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
- Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲ ▼

Select "**Calls list**" and confirm.

OK

▲ ▼

Select the number and confirm to start the call.

OK

i The calls list includes calls sent and received in the vehicle using the connected telephone.

! It is possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.

Making a call - From the directory of contacts

SOURCE

To display the "**TELEPHONE**" menu:
- Make a long press on **SRC/TEL**.
- Or, press the dial to display the contextual menu. Select "**Call**" and confirm.
- Or, press **MENU**, select "**Telephone**" and confirm. Select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲ ▼

Select "**Directory**" and confirm.

OK

* Depending on the compatibility of the telephone.

Select a contact then confirm.



Home

Business

Mobile
(depending on the information available in the contact records of the telephone connected).

OK

Select the number and confirm.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the multifunction screen.

"**YES**" to accept the call is selected by default.
Press **OK** to accept the call.
Select "**NO**" and confirm to reject the call.
or
Press one of these buttons to accept the call.

A long press on **ESC** or on **TEL**, **SOURCE** or **SRC** also rejects an incoming call.

SOURCE

SRC

Managing calls

OK

During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

Hang up

In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK

A long press on one of these buttons also ends the call.

SOURCE

SRC

Secret - Mute



(so that the caller cannot hear)





In the contextual menu:

- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.



Combined mode

(to leave the vehicle without ending the call)



In the contextual menu:

- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone.
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.



In certain cases, the combined mode has to activated from the telephone.
If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).

Interactive voice response



From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.



Consultation call



From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and conform to return to a call left on hold.



Directory



The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected by Bluetooth.



With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

SOURCE

Make a long press on **SOURCE** or **SRC** for access to the directory or press **OK**, and select "**Call**" and confirm.

▲
▼

OK

▲
▼

Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK

MENU

To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:

- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

Audio settings

Screen A



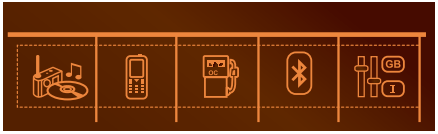
Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.

Press ◀◀ or ▶▶ to modify the selected setting.

Press ▲ or ▼ for the previous or next setting in the list.

The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are separate and independent for each sound source.

Screen C



Press ♫ to display the audio settings menu.

The settings available are:
- Ambience,
- Bass,
- Treble,
- Loudness,
- Distribution: Personalised or Driver,
- Left / right balance,
- Fader (front / rear balance),
- Auto. volume.

Select and confirm "**Other settings...**" to display the next setting in the list.

OK

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys© system), is an audio process which allows the sound quality to be improved according to the setting chosen, corresponding to the position of the listeners in the vehicle.

The Ambience, Treble and Bass audio settings are different and independent for each sound source.

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the the passenger compartment.

Screen menu map(s)

Main function

- 1 **Option A**
  - 2 **Option A1**
    - 3 Option A11
- 1 **Option B...**

Screen A

- 1 **RADIO**
  - 2 **RDS options**
  - 2 **Infotext**
  - 2 **Radiotext**
- 1 **TRIP COMPUTER**
  - 2 **Diagnostics**
- 1 **DATE AND TIME**
- 1 **MEDIA**
  - 2 **Read mode**
    - 3 Normal
    - 3 Random
    - 3 Random all
- 1 **LANGUAGES**
  - 2 **Français**
  - 2 **Italiano**
  - 2 **Nederlands**
  - 2 **Português**
  - 2 **Português-brasil**
  - 2 **Deutsch**
  - 2 **English**
  - 2 **Español**
  - 2 **Cestina**
  - 2 **Hrvatski**
  - 2 **Magyar**
- 1 **VEHICLE PARAM***

* Depending on vehicle equipment.

Screen C

MEDIA

- 1 **Media parameters**
  - 2 **Choice of playback mode**
    - 3 Normal
    - 3 Random
    - 3 Random all
    - 3 Repeat
  - 2 **Choice of track listing**
    - 3 By folders
    - 3 By artists
    - 3 By genres
    - 3 By playlists
- 1 **Radio parameters**

TELEPHONE

- 1 **Call**
  - 2 **Dial**
  - 2 **Directory**
  - 2 **Calls list**
  - 2 **Voice mail box**
- 1 **Directory management**
  - 2 **Consult an entry**
  - 2 **Delete an entry**
  - 2 **Delete all entries**
- 1 **Telephone management**
  - 2 **Telephone status**
- 1 **Hang up**

TRIP COMPUTER

- 1 **Vehicle diagnosis**

BLUETOOTH CONNECTION

- 1 **Connections management**
- 1 **Search for a device**

PERSONALISATION - CONFIGURATION

- 1 **Define the vehicle parameters***
- 1 **Choice of language**
- 1 **Display configuration**
  - 2 **Choice of units**
  - 2 **Date and time adjustment**
  - 2 **Display parameters**
  - 2 **Brightness**
- 1 **Choice of sounds**

* Depending on vehicle equipment.

Frequently asked questions

The following tables contain answers to the most frequently asked questions.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, CD...).	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source (radio, CD...).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the AUDIO functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
If the bass and treble settings are modified, the ambience selected is cancelled.	The selection of an ambience imposes specific bass and treble settings.	To obtain the desired sound quality, modify the treble and bass settings or select a pre-defined ambience setting.
If the ambience setting is changed, the previous settings for treble and bass are cancelled.		
If the "Driver" / "All passengers" distribution is modified, the balance settings are cancelled.	Choosing a distribution setting imposes a specific balance setting. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
When changing the balance setting, the "Driver" / "All passengers" distribution is cancelled.		

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the RDS function to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Deactivate the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.
The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station does not broadcast traffic information.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The stored stations are not found (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed...).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband on which the stations are stored.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio equipment.	- Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. - Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too damaged. - Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "Audio" section. - The audio equipment's CD player does not play DVDs. - Due to their quality level, certain writeable CDs will not be played by the audio system.
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.	It is possible that Bluetooth is switched off on the telephone or that the telephone has not been made not visible.	- Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. - Check in the telephone's settings that it is "Visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral may not be sufficiently charged.	Recharge the battery of the peripheral device.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The message "USB peripheral error" or "Peripheral not recognised" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the memory stick (FAT32).
A telephone connects automatically, disconnecting another telephone.	Automatic connection overrides manual connection.	Modify the telephone settings to remove automatic connection.
The Apple® player is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	The Apple® player is of a generation that is not compatible with a USB connection.	Connect the Apple® player to the AUX Jack socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The hard disk or device is not recognised when connecting to the USB port.	Some hard disks and devices need a power supply greater than is provided by the audio system.	Connect the device to the 230 V socket, the 12 V socket or an external power supply. **Caution**: ensure that the device does not transmit a voltage greater than 5 V (risk of destruction of the system).
When streaming, the sound cuts momentarily.	Some models of telephone prioritise connection with the "hands-free" profile.	Delete the "hands-free" connection profile to improve streaming.
In "Random all" play, not all of the tracks are played.	In "Random all" play, the system can only take into account up to 999 tracks.	

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: energy economy mode is activated automatically to preserve the state of charge of the vehicle's battery. (See the "Energy Economy Mode" section).	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume or stopping of the playing of the CD.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

A

ABS and EBFD systems 140
Accessories 236
Accessory position 173
Accessory socket, 12V 117
Additive, AdBlue 23, 232
Adjusting headlamps 132
Adjusting head restraints 83
Adjusting seats 81, 82
Adjusting the date 40, 42, 51
Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel 86
Adjusting the seat belt height 143, 145
Adjusting the time 37, 41, 46, 51
Advice on driving 166, 167
Airbags 22, 147
Airbags, curtain 149, 150
Airbags, front 148, 150
Airbags, lateral 149, 150
Air conditioning 10, 91
Air conditioning, automatic 95
Air conditioning, manual 93
Air vents 90
Alarm 71
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 140
Anti-pinch 76, 107
Anti-theft 66, 168
Armrest, front 110, 111
Armrest, rear 117
Assistance call 139, 280
Audible warning 139
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 314, 364, 367
Audio system 40, 42, 353
Audio system pre-equipment 220
Auxiliary 104, 312, 364

B

Battery 230, 265-268
Battery, charging 267, 268
Battery, remote control 61, 66-68
Black panel 39
Blanking screen (snow shield) 213
Blind, panoramic roof 107
Blind spot sensors 195
BlueHDi 232
Bluetooth (hands-free) 340, 366
Bluetooth (telephone) 340, 341
Bonnet 223
Boot 79
Brake discs 231
Brake lamps 257
Brake pads 231
Braking assistance system 140
Braking, dynamic emergency 178
Bulbs (changing) 251-259

C

Cable, audio 312, 364
Capacity, fuel tank 209
CarPlay connection 333, 334
CD 312, 361
CD, MP3 ..... 312, 361, 362
Central locking 56, 62, 69
Centre console 108
Changing a bulb 251-259
Changing a fuse 260-264
Changing a wheel 244-250
Changing a wiper blade 137, 221
Changing the remote control battery 61, 66, 67
Checking the engine oil level 29, 266
Checking the levels 226-229
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 243
Checks 224-231
Checks, routine 230, 231
Child lock 165
Children (safety) 146, 148, 151-165
Child seats 146, 151, 152, 156-158, 164
Child seats, conventional 157
Child seats, ISOFIX 161
CITROËN Connect Box 280
CITROËN Localised Emergency Call 280
Clock 37
Closing the boot 58, 79
Closing the doors 58, 63, 78
Configuration, vehicle 41, 44, 49
Connected services 324
Connection, Bluetooth 340

Connection, MirrorLink 328
Connection, Wi-Fi network 326
Control, electric windows 75
Control, emergency boot release 80
Control, emergency door 60, 65
Control, heated seats 83
Controls, steering mounted 286, 355
Control stalk, lighting 124
Control stalk, wipers 135
Courtesy lamps 105
Cover, load space 123
Cruise control 201, 204
Cup holder 108

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio 310, 359
Date (setting) 41, 46, 51
Daytime running lamps 128, 251, 255
Deactivating the passenger airbag 148
Defrosting 100, 101
Diesel 26, 210
Dimensions 278
Dipstick 29, 226
Direction indicators 128, 131, 251, 253, 257
Display screen, instrument panel 12-14, 187
Display screen, multifunction (with audio system) 40, 42
Door pockets 102
Doors 78
Drawer, storage 114
Driving economically 10
Driving positions (storing) 85
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 141

E

Eco-driving 10
Economy mode 219
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) 140
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 140
Emergency call 139, 280
Emergency warning lamps 139
Emissions control system, SCR 24, 232
Energy economy mode 219
Engine compartment 224, 225
Engine, Diesel 210, 225, 238, 273
Engine, petrol 210, 224, 271
Environment 10, 68, 91, 101, 186, 192, 229, 235

F

Filling the fuel tank 209-211
Filter, air 230
Filter, oil 230
Filter, particle 229, 230
Filter, passenger compartment 230
Fitting a wheel 249
Fitting roof bars 222
Fittings, boot 118, 123
Fittings, interior 102, 103
Fitting speakers 220
Fittings, rear 117
Flap, fuel filler 209, 211
Flashing indicators 128, 131, 253, 256
Foglamps, front 126, 134, 251, 256
Foglamps, rear 126, 257
Frequency (radio) 308, 357
Fuel 210
Fuel consumption 10
Fuel tank 209, 211
Fusebox, dashboard 262
Fusebox, engine compartment 264
Fuses 260

G

Gauge, fuel 12, 13, 14, 209
Gearbox, automatic 182, 188, 231, 268
Gearbox, manual 181, 188, 231
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 182

Gear lever, manual gearbox....181
Gear shift indicator....187
Glove box....103
Grab handles....102

H

Hazard warning lamps....139
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation....139
Headlamp adjustment....132
Headlamps, automatic illumination....125, 129
Headlamps, dipped beam....124, 251, 254
Headlamps, directional....132, 133, 251
Headlamps, halogen....252
Headlamps, main beam....124, 251, 254
Headlamps, Xenon....251
Headlamp wash....137
Head restraints, front....83
Head restraints, rear....115
Heating....90, 93, 95
Hill start assist....191
Hooks....119

I

Ignition....168, 171
Immobiliser, electronic....68, 168
Indicator, engine oil level....29
Indicator lamps, operation....25-28
Indicator lamps, status....26
Indicators, direction....131, 253, 257
Inflating tyres....10, 259
Inflating tyres and accessories (using the kit)....243
Input, auxiliary....104, 312, 364
Instrument panels....12-14, 39
Intelligent Traction Control....141
Internet browser....325
ISOFIX....160-163
Isofix mountings....160

J

Jack....244
Jukebox....315
Jump starting....266

K

Key....56-68
Keyless Entry and Starting....62-68
Key not recognised....172
Key with remote control....56-59
Kit, hands-free....340, 366
Kit, temporary puncture repair....239

L

Labels, identification....279
Lamp, boot....120, 122
Lamps, parking....128
Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)....194
Level, AdBlue® additive....232
Level, brake fluid....227
Level, Diesel additive....229
Level, engine coolant....228
Level, engine oil....29, 226
Level, power steering fluid....227
Levels and checks....224-229
Lighting dimmer....12-14, 38
Lighting, directional....133, 134
Lighting, guide-me home....128, 130
Lighting, interior....105, 106
Lighting, mood....106
Lighting, welcome....130
Loading....10, 222
Load reduction mode....219
Localised Assistance Call....280
Locating your vehicle....59, 64

Locking 58, 63, 65, 68
Locking from the inside 69
Long objects, transporting 117
Low fuel level 20, 209
Luggage retaining strap 118

M

Maintenance, routine 10, 224-231
Map reading lamps 105
Markings, identification 279
Massage function 84
Mat 113
Memorising a speed 204
Menu (touch screen tablet) 283, 287 288, 290, 294, 302, 304, 306, 316, 318, 320, 336, 338
Menu, main 356
Menus (audio) 302, 304, 306
Mirror, rear view 89
Mirrors, door 87, 88, 195
Mirror, vanity 103
Misfuel prevention 211
Mountings, Isofix 160
MP3 CD 312, 361, 362

N

Navigation 288
Net, storage 118
Number plate lamps 259

O

Oil change 226
Oil consumption 226
OIl, engine 226
Opening the bonnet 223
Opening the boot 57, 62, 79
Opening the doors 56, 62, 78
Opening the panoramic roof blind 107

P

Pads, brake 231
Paint colour code 279
Panoramic glass sunroof 107
Parcel shelf, rear 119, 123
Parking brake 174, 231
Parking brake, electric 18, 175, 231
Parking sensors, front 207
Parking sensors, rear 206
Personalisation 39
Petrol 210
Player, Apple® 314
Player, MP3 CD 312, 361, 362
Player, USB 312, 363
Port, USB 104, 312, 363
Pressures, tyres 279
Pre-tensioning seat belts 146
Priming the fuel system 238
Protecting children 146, 148, 151-165
Puncture 239

R

Radio 308, 357
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) 310, 359
RDS 309, 357
Rear screen, demisting 101
Recharging the battery 267, 268
Reduction of electrical load 219
Regeneration of the particle filter 230
Reinitialising the electric windows 76
Reinitialising the remote control 61, 67
Reminder, key in ignition 170
Remote control 56-68
Removing a wheel 247
Removing the mat 113
Replacing bulbs 251-259
Replacing fuses 260-264
Replacing the air filter 230

Replacing the oil filter 230
Replacing the passenger compartment filter 230
Resetting the service indicator 32
Resetting the trip recorder 36
Rev counter 12-15
Reversing lamps 257
Risk areas (update) 299
Roof bars 222
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 238

S

Safety, children 146, 148, 151-165
Screen, cold climate 213
Screen menu map 288, 290, 294, 302, 304, 306, 316, 318, 320, 336, 338, 374-376
Screen, multifunction 40, 42, 356, 374
Screenwash, front 137
Screenwash, rear 138
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) 232
Seat belts 143-146, 157
Seats, electric 82
Seats, front 81, 82, 85
Seats, heated 83
Seats, rear 115
Serial number, vehicle 279
Service indicator 30
Servicing 10
Settings, equipment 41, 44, 49
Settings (Menus) 316, 318, 320, 323
Sidelamps 124, 128, 251, 255, 257
Side repeater 256
Ski flap 117
Snow chains 212
Socket, 12 V accessory 103, 109, 120
Sockets, audio 104, 363, 364
Speakers (fitting) 220
Speed limiter 198, 204
Speedometer 12-14
Spotlamps, side 130, 256
Starting the engine 168
Starting using another battery 266
Station, radio 308, 357
Stay, bonnet 223
Steering wheel, adjustment 86
Stop & Start 27, 55, 96, 100, 188, 209, 223, 230, 265
Storage 102, 103, 108, 110, 111, 118
Storage compartments 108
Storing driving positions 85
Stowing rings 118
Sun visor 103
Switching off the engine 168
Synchronising the remote control 61, 67

T

Table of weights 272, 275, 277
Tables of engines 271, 273
Tables of fuses 260
Tank, AdBlue® additive 232
Tank, fuel 209, 211
Technical data 271-278
Telephone 336, 366
Three flashes (direction indicators) 131
Ticket holder 102
Time (setting) 37, 41, 46, 50
TMC (Traffic info) 300
Tools 244
Topping-up the AdBlue® additive 233
Torch 120
Total distance recorder 36
Touch screen tablet 47
Touch screen tablet (Menus) 48, 50, 283, 287
Towball, quickly detachable 214
Towbar 167, 213
Towbar with quickly detachable towball 214
Towed loads 272, 275, 277
Towing another vehicle 269
Traction control (ASR) 141
Traffic information (TA) 301, 358
Traffic information (TMC) 300
Trailer 167, 213
Trajectory control systems 141
Trip computer 52-55
Trip distance recorder 36
Tyres 10
Tyre under-inflation detection 192

U

Under floor storage 121
Under-inflation (detection) 192
Unlocking 56, 62
Unlocking from the inside 69
Unlocking the boot 56
Unlocking the doors 56, 62
Updating risk areas 299
Updating the date 41, 46, 50
Updating the time 41, 46, 50
UREA 33, 232
USB 104, 312, 364

V

Ventilation 90-91, 93, 97
Voice recognition 329, 333

W

Warning and indicator lamps 16-28
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 26
Warning lamps 16-24
Warning lamp, SCR emissions control system 24
Warning lamp, Service 19
Weights 272, 275, 277
Wheel, spare 244, 245
Window controls 75
Wiper blades (changing) 137, 221
Wiper, rear 138
Wipers 27, 135, 136
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 135, 136





Labels are fitted in various areas of your vehicle. They carry safety warnings as well as vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they form an integral part of your vehicle.

Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European regulation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this regulation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, competence and equipment required, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not listed by CITROËN may cause faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special diagnostic tool required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by Automobiles CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer would lead to the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

Printed in the EU
Anglais
08-15

Automobiles CITROËN
Siège social : 6, rue Fructidor 75017 Paris - France
Tél. : +33 (0) 1 58 79 79 79 - www.citroen.com
Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. : 642 050 199 R.C.S. Paris - SIRET : 642 050 199 00990 - APE : 7010Z



2015 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD

4Dconcept

Diadeis

Interak

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

CITROËN

15.C4.0041

Anglais

SUPPLEMENT

CITROËN

CITROËN C4



CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Welcome

This document contains the latest updates to the handbook for your vehicle.
This information completes or cancels and replaces the information in the handbook.
First refer to the handbook for your vehicle.

Key

Safety warning.

Additional information.

Contribution towards protecting nature.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A.
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A. Gas capacity 0.425 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1 430 t (equivalent CO_2: 0.608 t).

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5
E10

Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name…) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Only the 12 V socket **at the front** of the vehicle allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair or inflate a tyre.
The other 12 V sockets in the vehicle are not suited to the use of the compressor.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

- Switch off the ignition.
- Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



☞ Turn the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.

☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



☞ Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the"**O**" position.

☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Switch on the ignition.

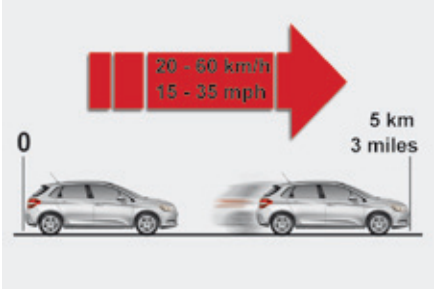


☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar.
The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date is marked on the cartridge.
After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

☞ Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
☞ Remove the kit.



☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



- Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
  To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Emergency or assistance call





Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

2015 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD

4Dconcept

Diadeis

Interak

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

CITROËN

Anglais

AN. 15.C4.A041

7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	4
Menus	5
Navigation	6
Navigation - Guidance	14
Traffic	18
Radio Media	20
Radio	26
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	28
Media	30
Settings	34
Connected services	42
MirrorLink™	42
CarPlay®	46
Telephone	48
Frequently asked questions	56

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

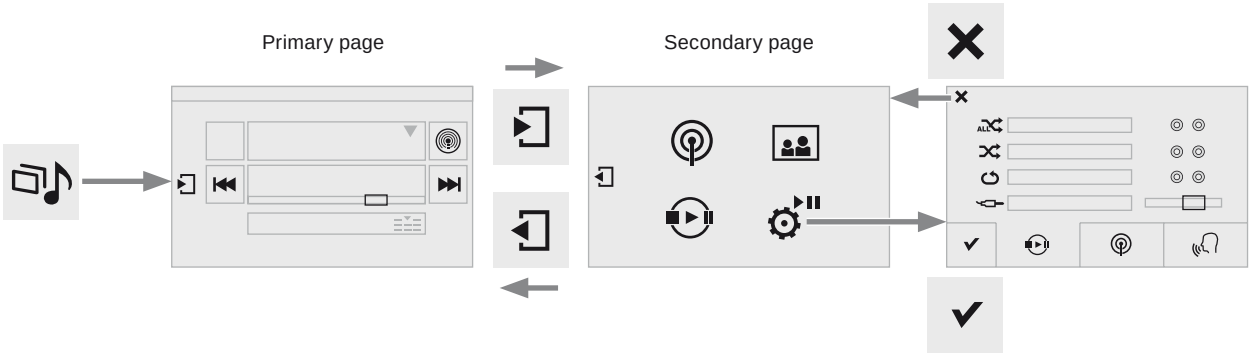
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby.
Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

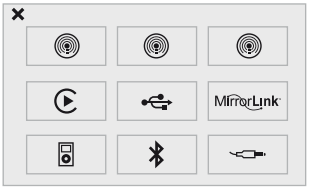
Use the buttons below the touch screen tablet for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).

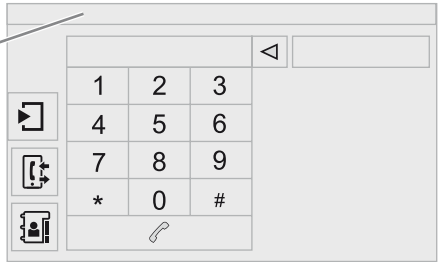


In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.



Short-cuts: using the virtual buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).





Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB / AM* stations.
- USB memory stick.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- CD player (located in front panel).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.
With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.



Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

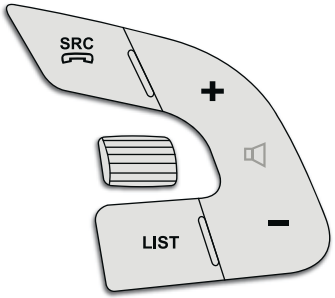
In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls



SRC

Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start a call.
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than a call in progress, access to the telephone menu.

Radio, turn: automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media, turn: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

\+

Increase volume.

–

Decrease volume.

Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



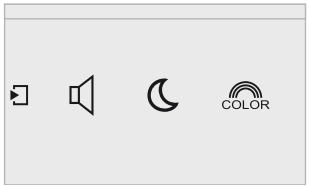
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Settings



Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...), colour schemes and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

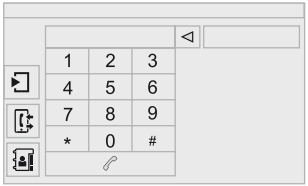
Connected services

(Depending on equipment)



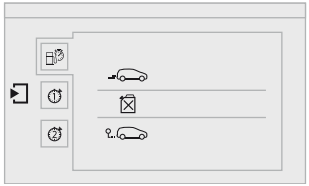
Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



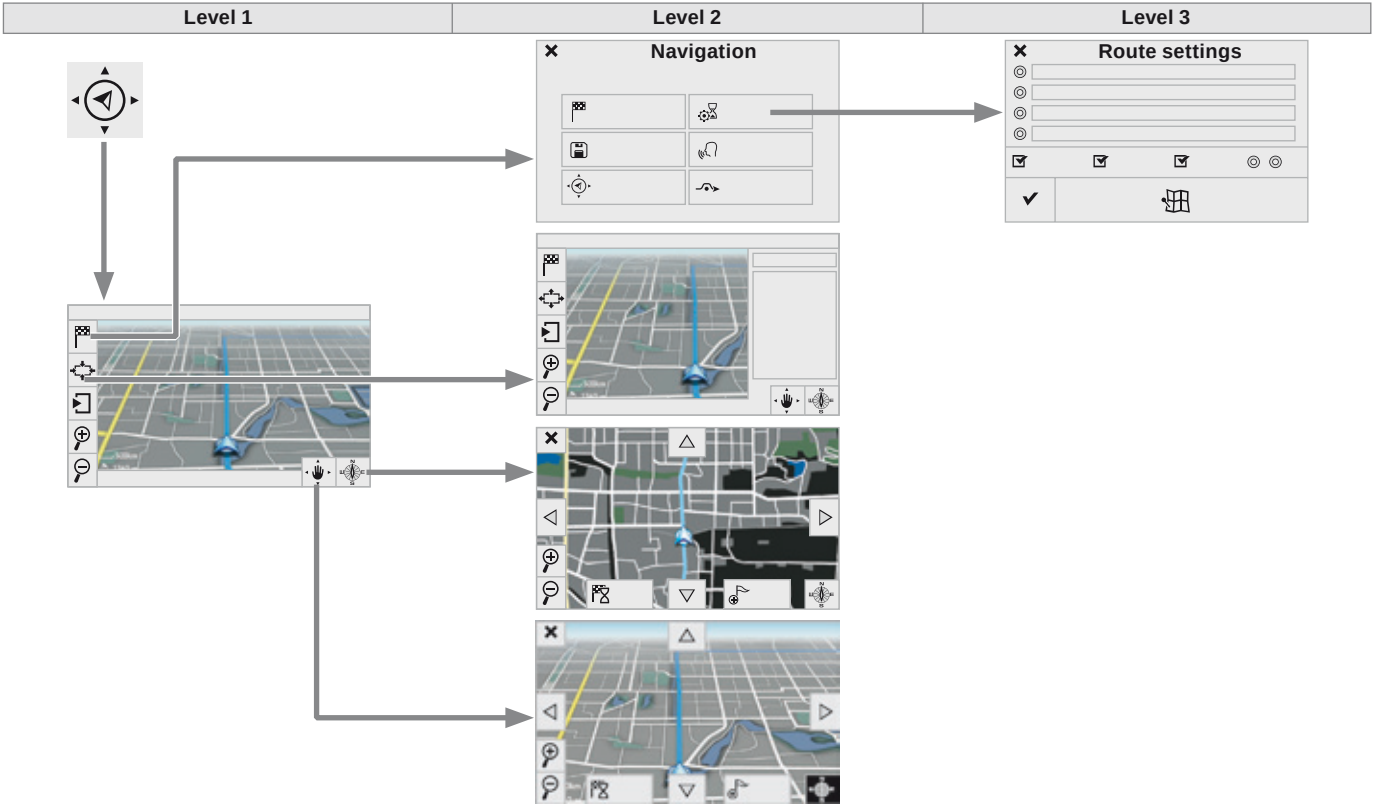
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

Driving



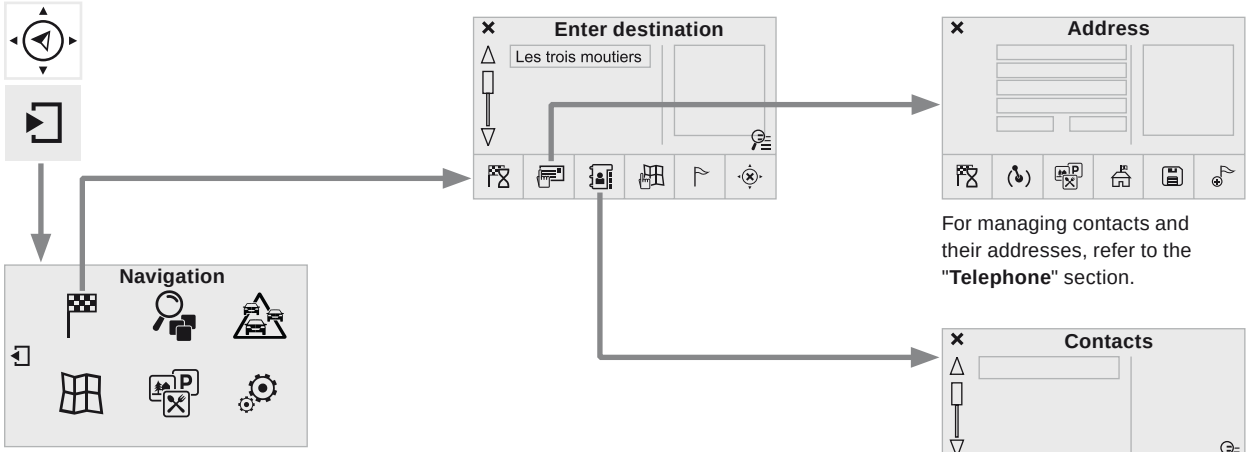
Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		**Enter destination**			Display recent destinations
			Route settings		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
				✔	Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
				▷		Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

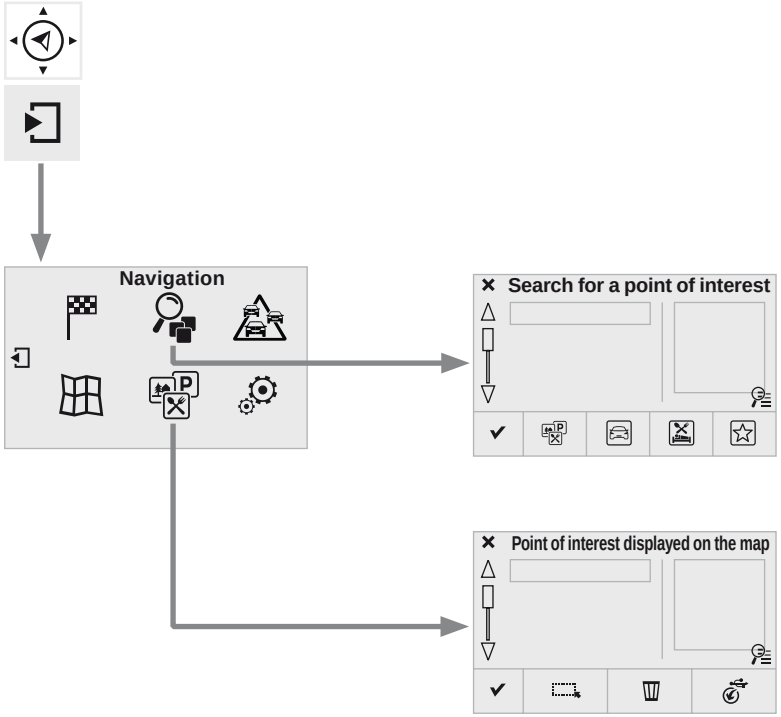


For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

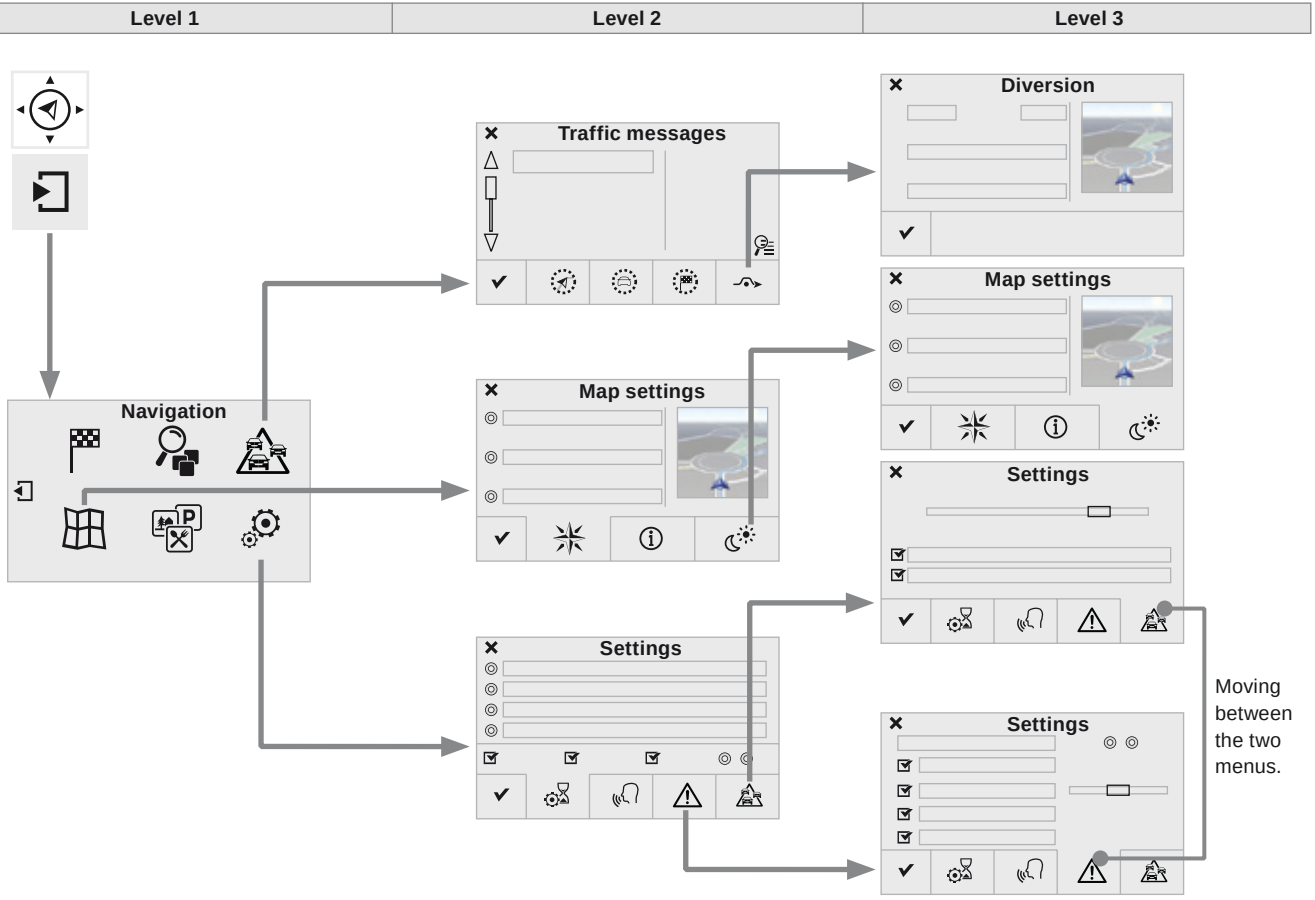
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation Secondary page Enter destination		**Address**		Current loc.	Address settings
					Point of interest	
					Town center	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			On the map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			Stop			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for POI		All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			Motor		
			Dining/hotels		
			Personal		
		✔	Search		Save the settings.
	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Show POIs		Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			Delete		
			Import POIs		
		✔	Confirm		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	◎ Detour over a distance	
		◎ Recalculate route	
	✔ Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings	Orientation	◎ Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		◎ Flat view vehicle heading	
		◎ Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	◎ "Day" map colour	
		◎ "Night" map colour	
		◎ Automatic day/night	
	✔ Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation → Secondary page → Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alarm!		
	Traffic options		
	✔ Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address** .



Select the **"Country:"** from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**".
Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".

Or



Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

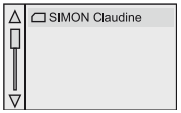
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



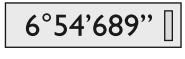
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**",

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",

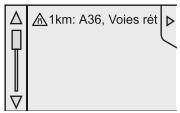


"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Traffic options**".

Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

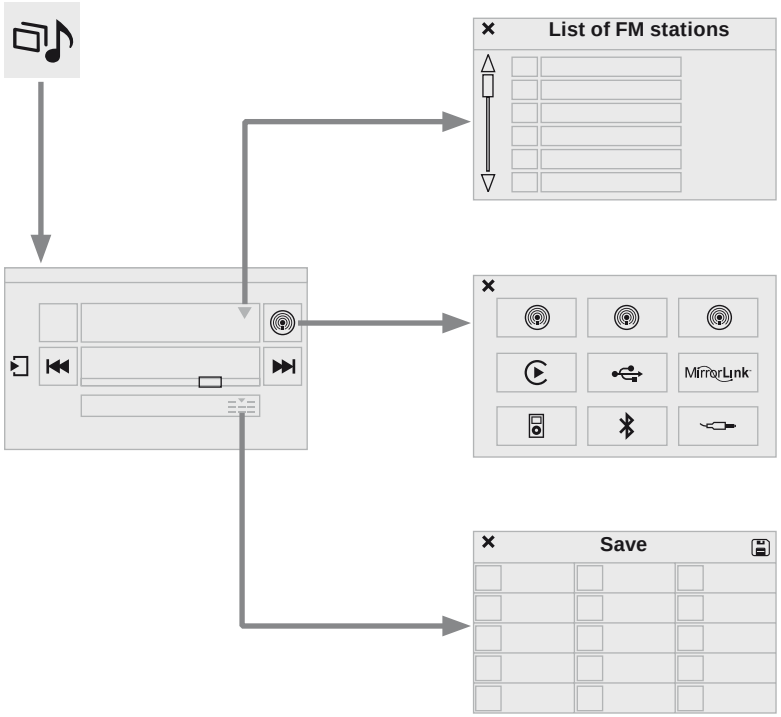
Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

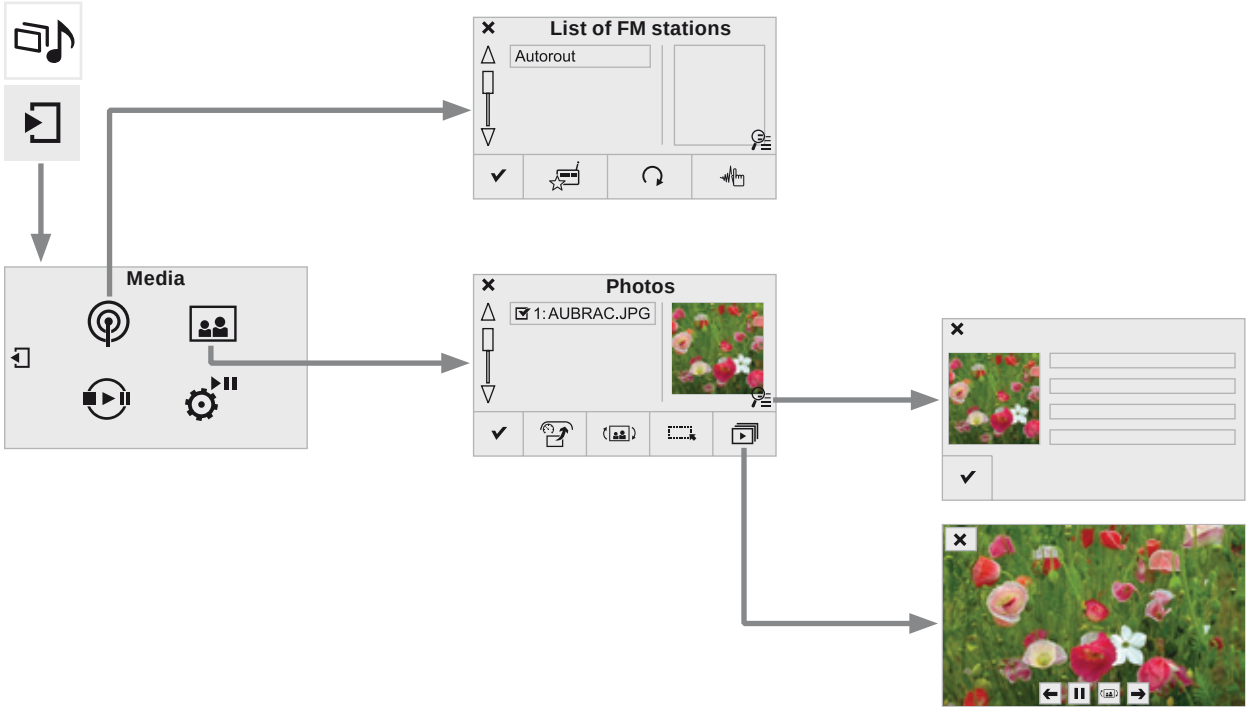
Radio Media

Level 1	Level 2

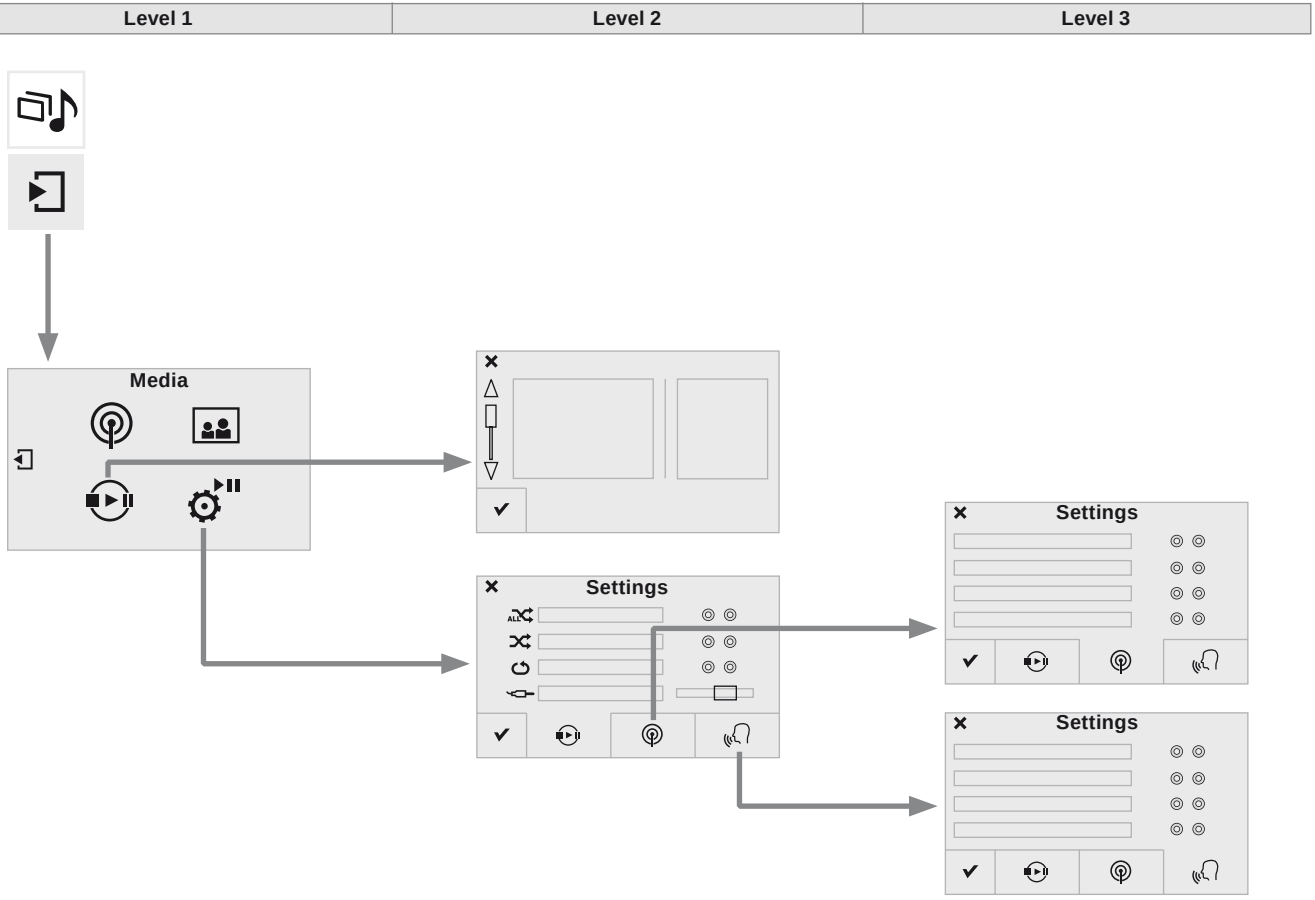


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **List**	▼	**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	Radio Media ↓ **Source**	Radio FM	**FM Radio**	Select change of source.
		Radio DAB	**DAB Radio**	
		Radio AM	**AM Radio**	
			USB	
			CD	
		MirrorLink	**MirrorLink™**	
			CarPlay®	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
	Radio Media ↓ **Save**			Press an empty location to Save it.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media → Secondary page → Radio list		**Save**			Press a radio station to select it.
			Update list			Update the list of stations received.
			Frequency			Enter the desired radio frequency.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.
	Radio Media → Secondary page → Photos		**Home screen**			Display the selected photo in the home page.
			Rotate			Rotate the photo 90°.
			Select all			Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
			Slideshow	←	Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
				⏸ ▷	Pause / Play.	
				→	Next photo.	
		✔	**Full screen**			Display the selected photo full-screen.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Media
Settings
Settings
Settings

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Settings**		**Media** ↓ **Settings**		Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.
					Shuffle (current album)	
					Repeat	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio ↓ **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					DAB/FM station tracking	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements ↓ **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					News - Weather	
					Sport - Programm info	
					Flash - Unforeseen events	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

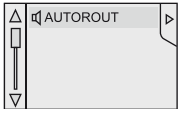
Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Save**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.

If necessary, select change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".



Or

"**AM Radio**".



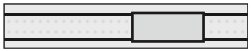
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN



Select change source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

OR

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Press on **Frequency**.

THEN

Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.
To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).

Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.
A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or

A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

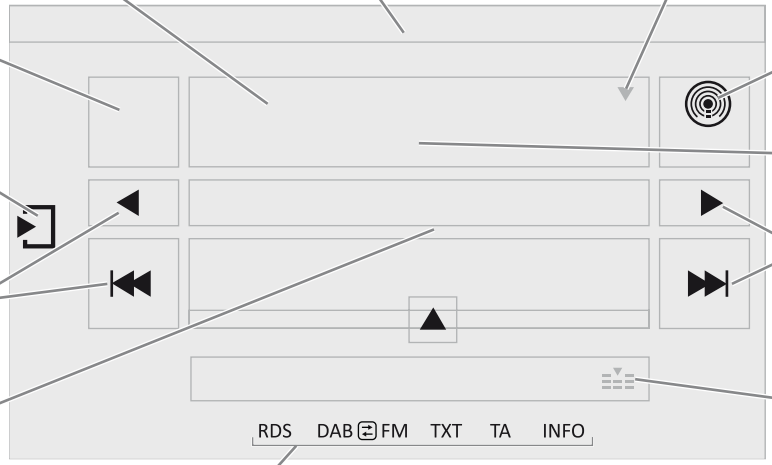
Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Radio**".

Off On Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Select the audio source. Display the "DAB" band.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Secondary page.

Next "Multiplex". Next radio station.

Previous "Multiplex". Previous radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15. Short press: select the preset radio station. Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name and number of the "multiplex" service being used.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

NewsService Journaline®

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or
Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



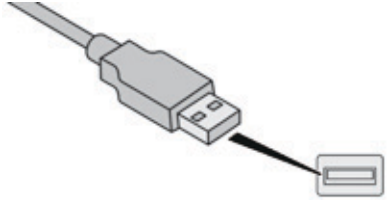
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

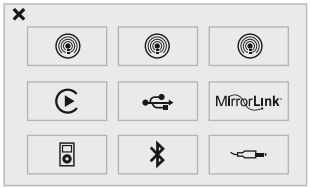
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

FM

Select change of source.



Choose the source.

SRC

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Press on **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, etc.) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

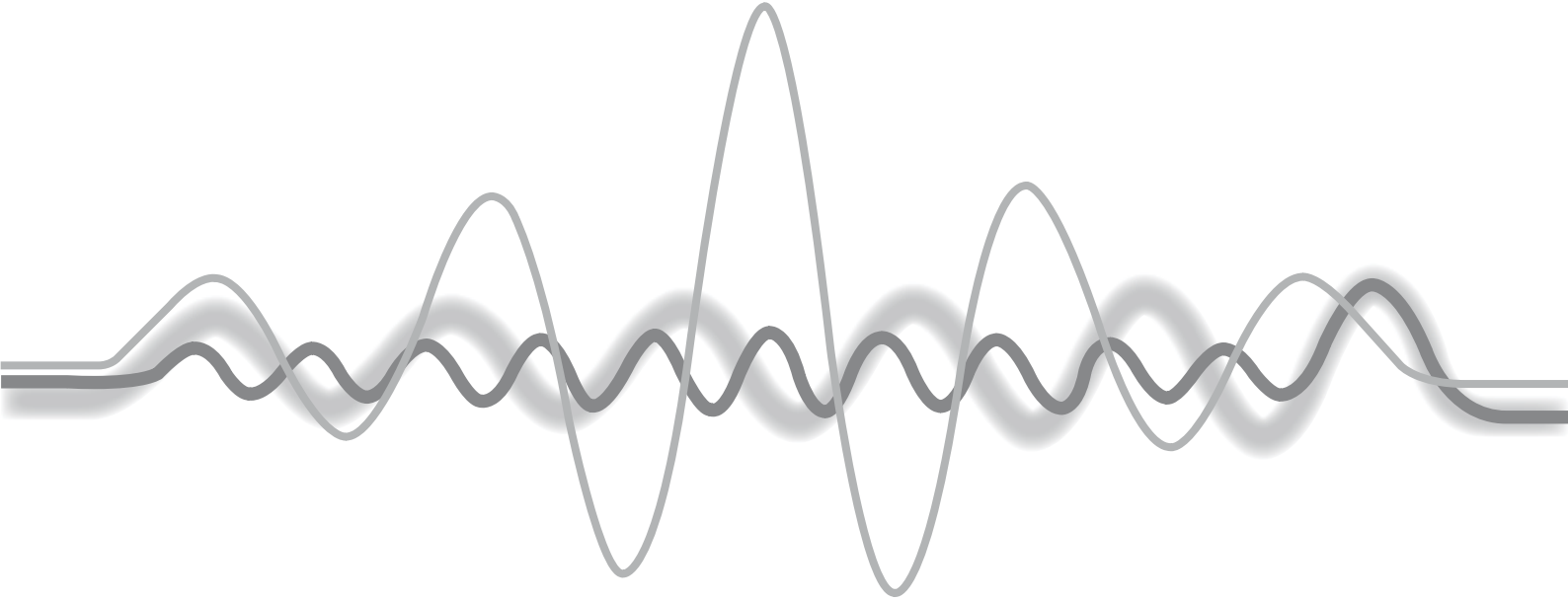
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



Bluetooth® audio streaming

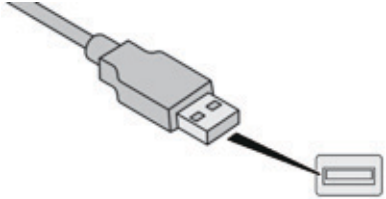
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

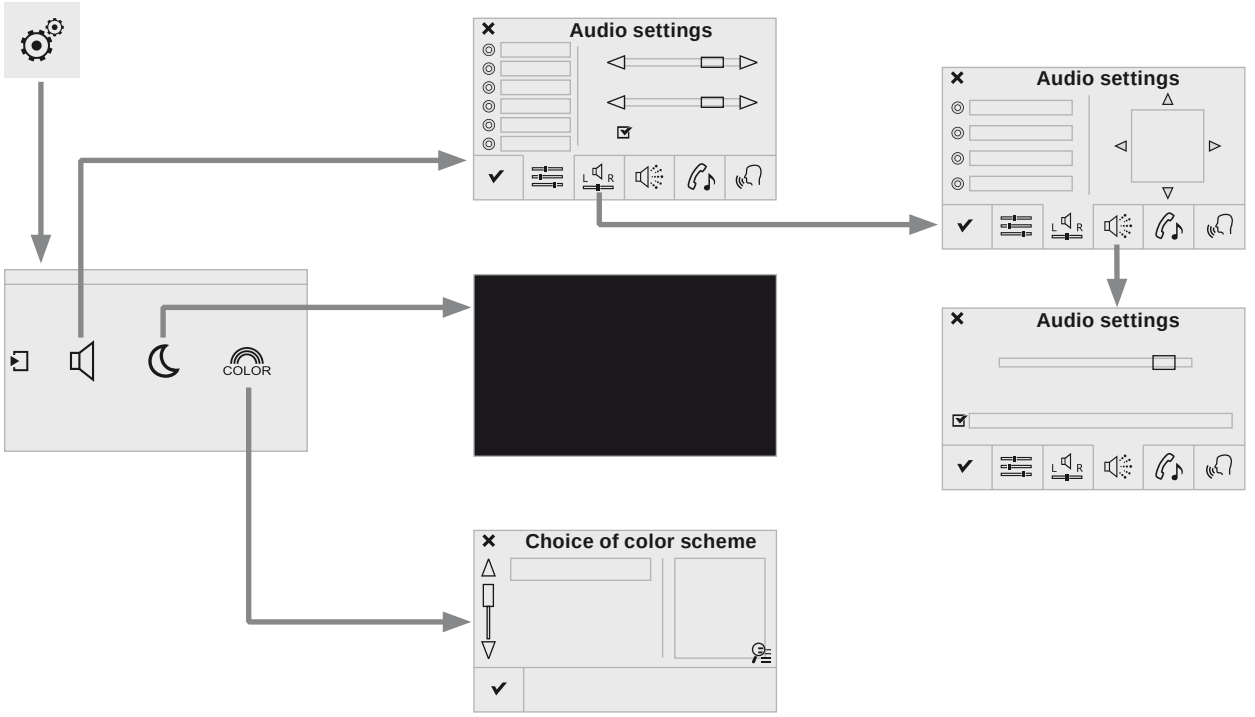
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

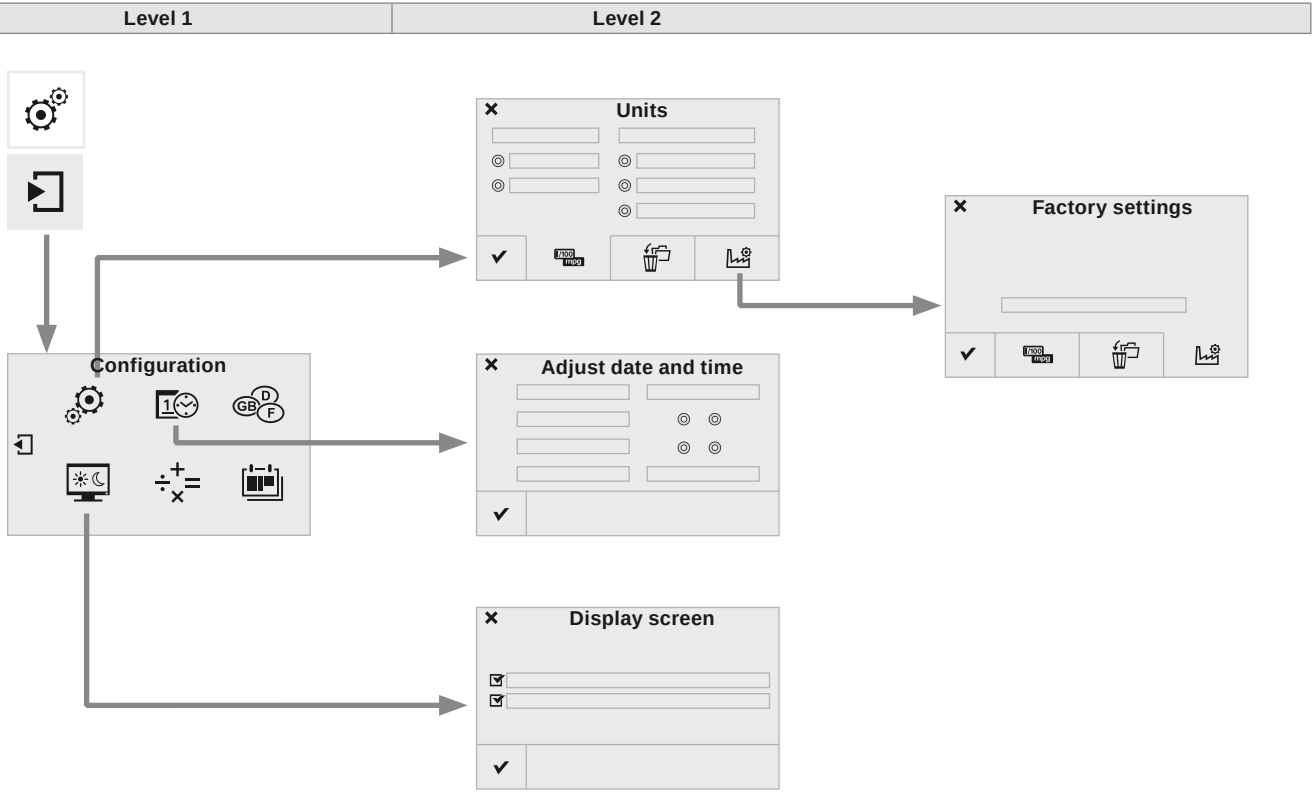
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Settings

Level 1	Level 2

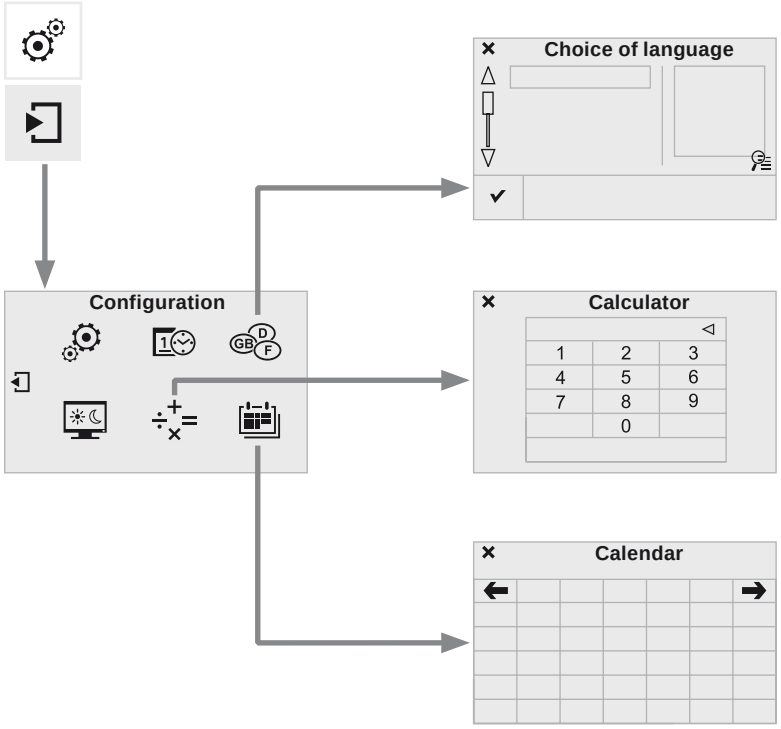


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Audio settings		**Ambience**	Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names
		✔	**Confirm**	Save your settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen	■		Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
	Settings → Color schemes		**Confirm**	Choose the color scheme, then confirm to save the setting.


Level 1
Level 2
Configuration
Units
Factory settings
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → **Secondary page** → **System Settings**		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Settings → **Secondary page** → **Time/Date**	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings → **Secondary page** → **Screen settings**		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Languages**	✔	**Confirm**	Select the language then confirm.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calculator**			Select the calculator.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calendar**			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass:**, **Treble:** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass:**"
- "**Treble:**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Color schemes



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select the color scheme in the list then "**Confirm**".

At each change of color scheme the system restarts, showing a black screen for a few moments.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.

The system does not manage changes between summer time and winter time automatically (according to country).



Select "**Languages**" to change language.

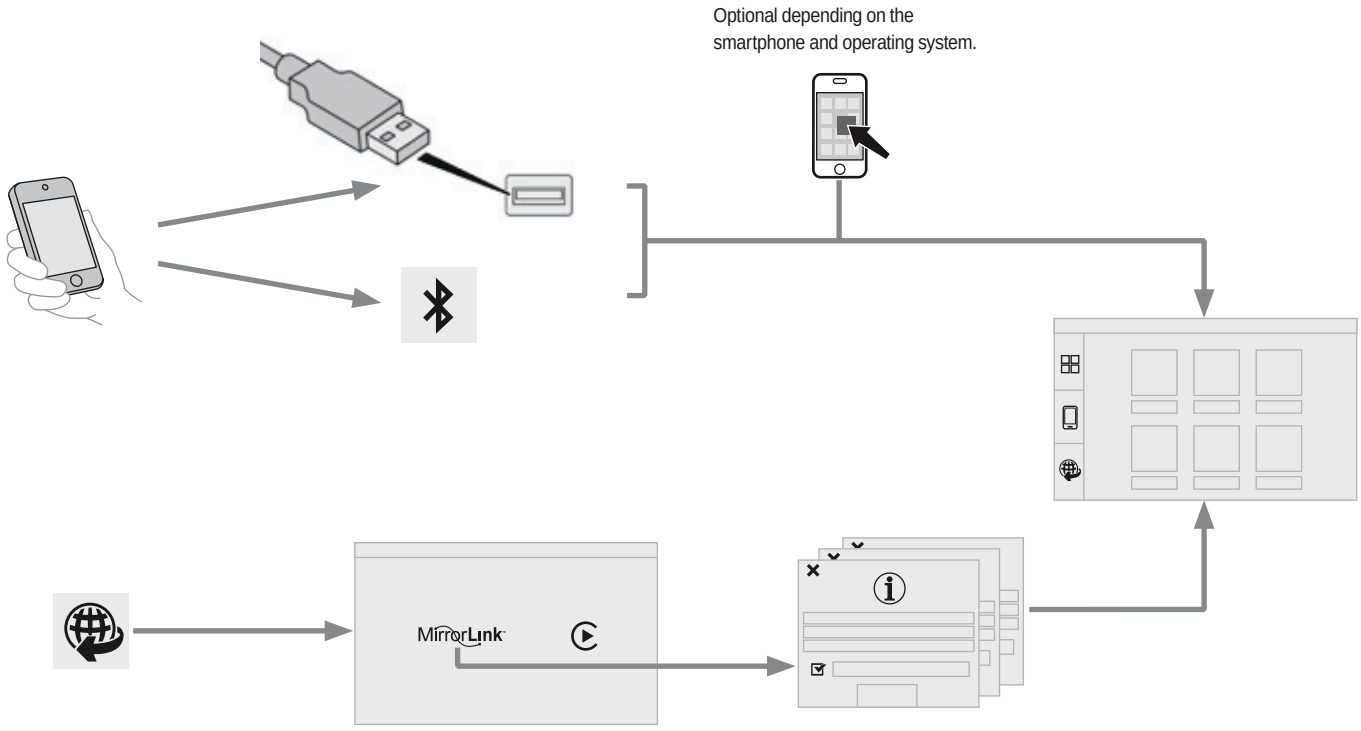


Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services
MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

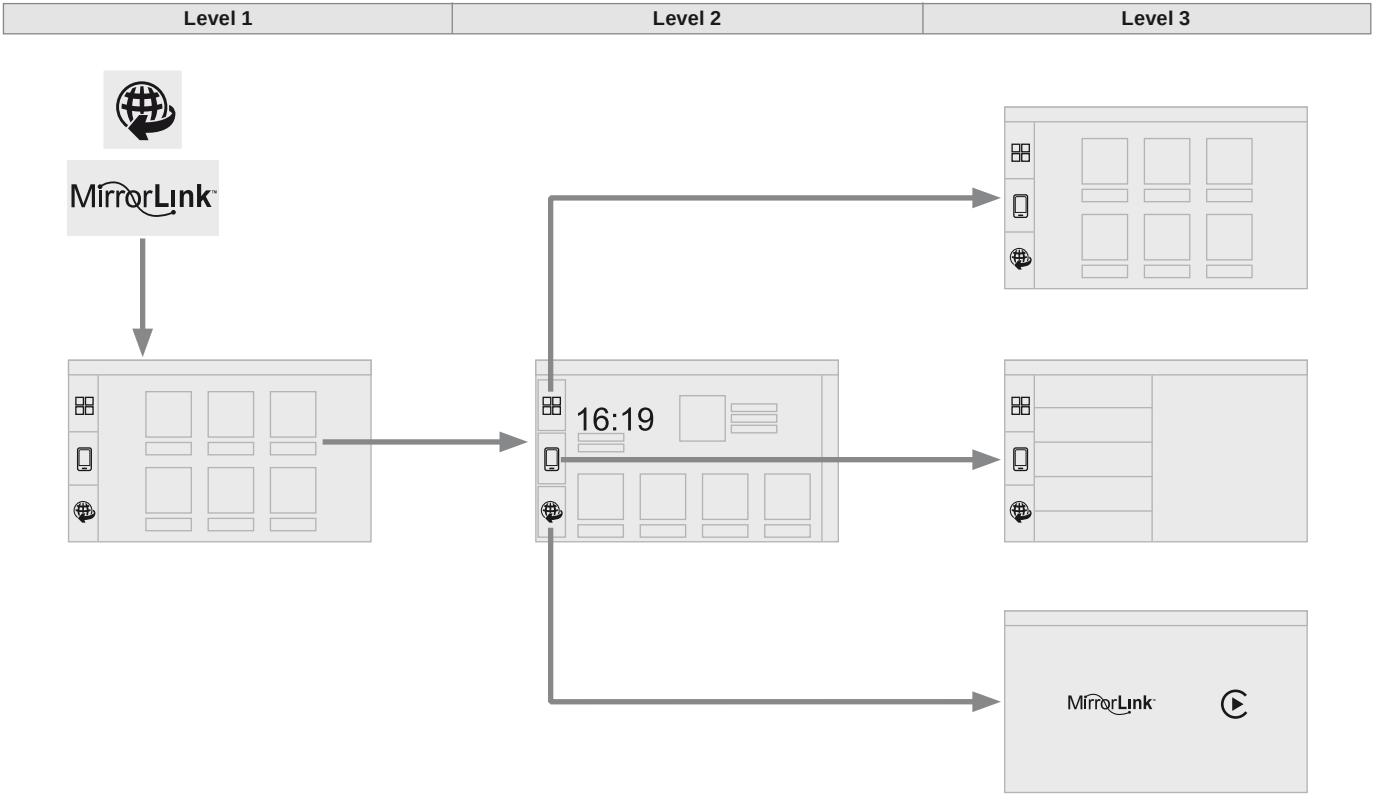
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

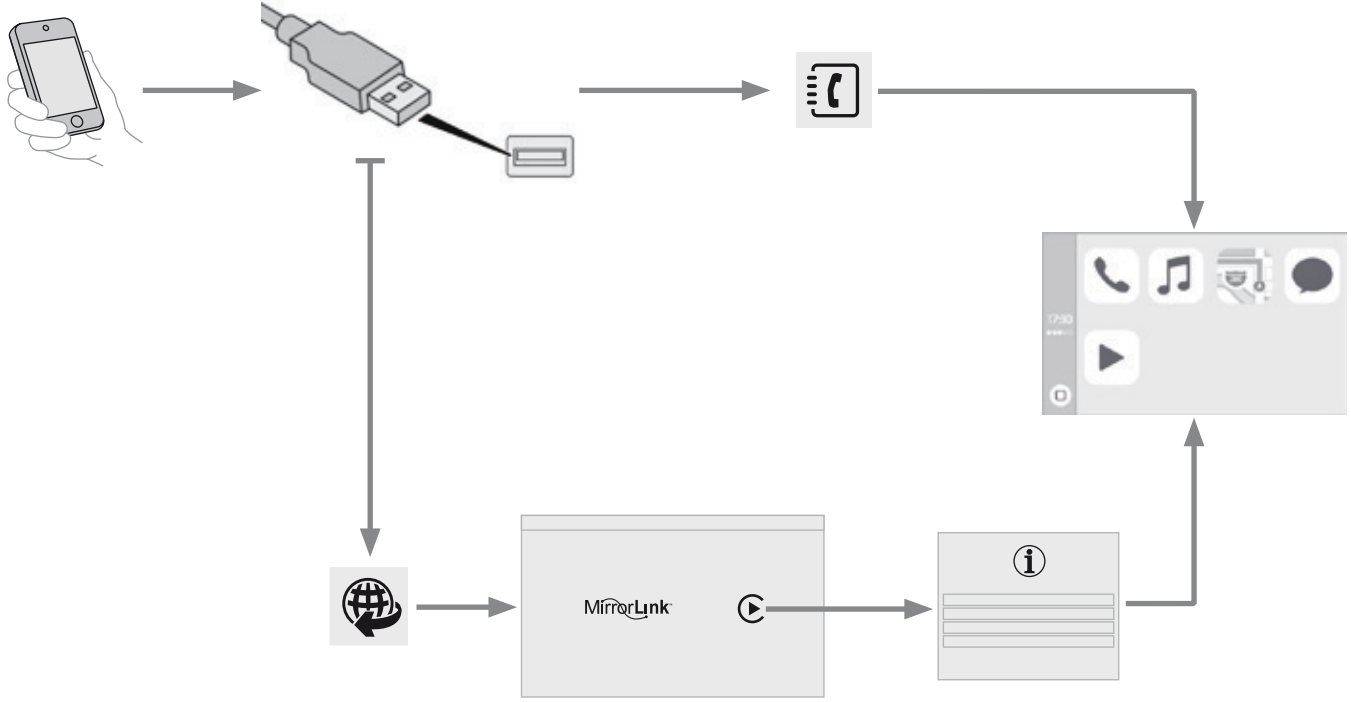
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ MirrorLink™					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

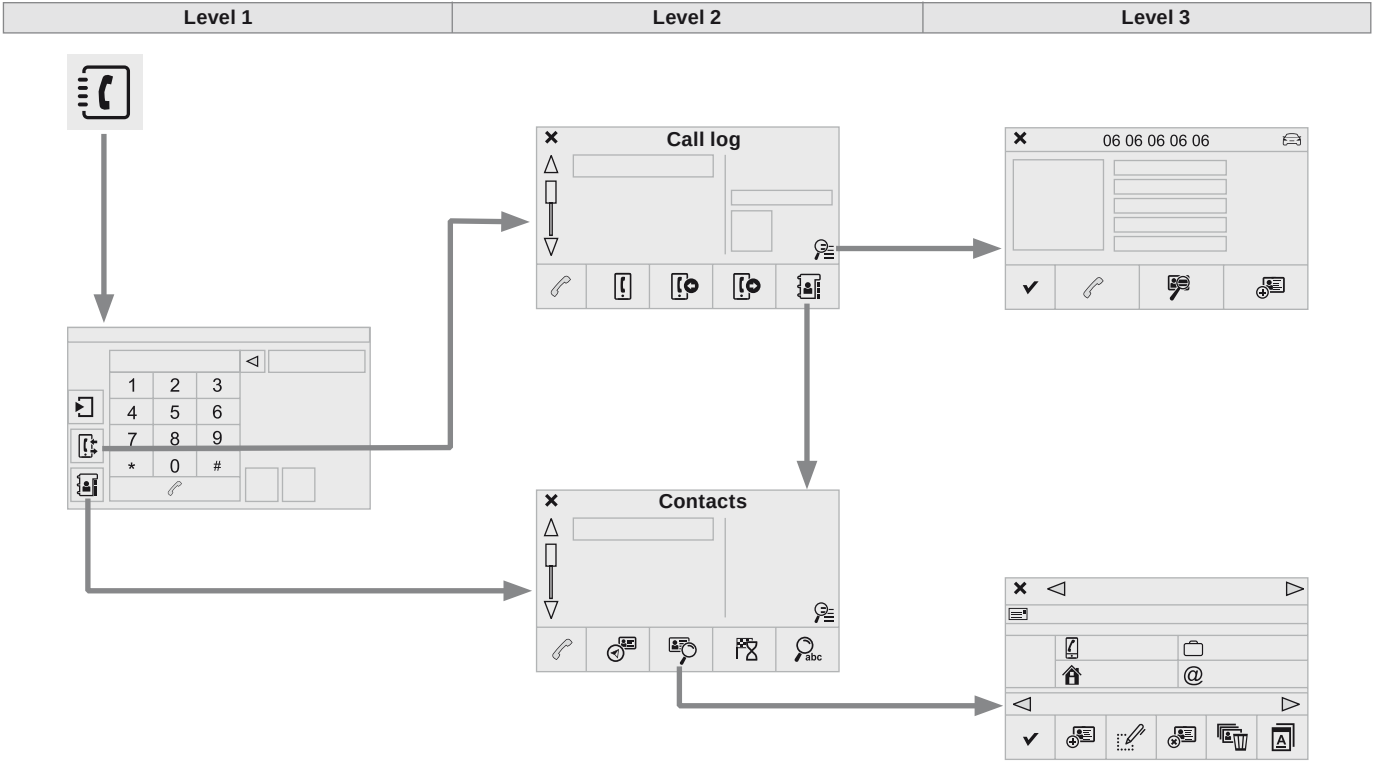
During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

When the telephone menu is displayed, on connecting the USB cable the display changes automatically to CarPlay mode.
If a menu other than the telephone menu is displayed, on connecting the USB cable a message is displayed in the upper banner indicating the activation of the CarPlay mode.
Press on Open to display the CarPlay mode.

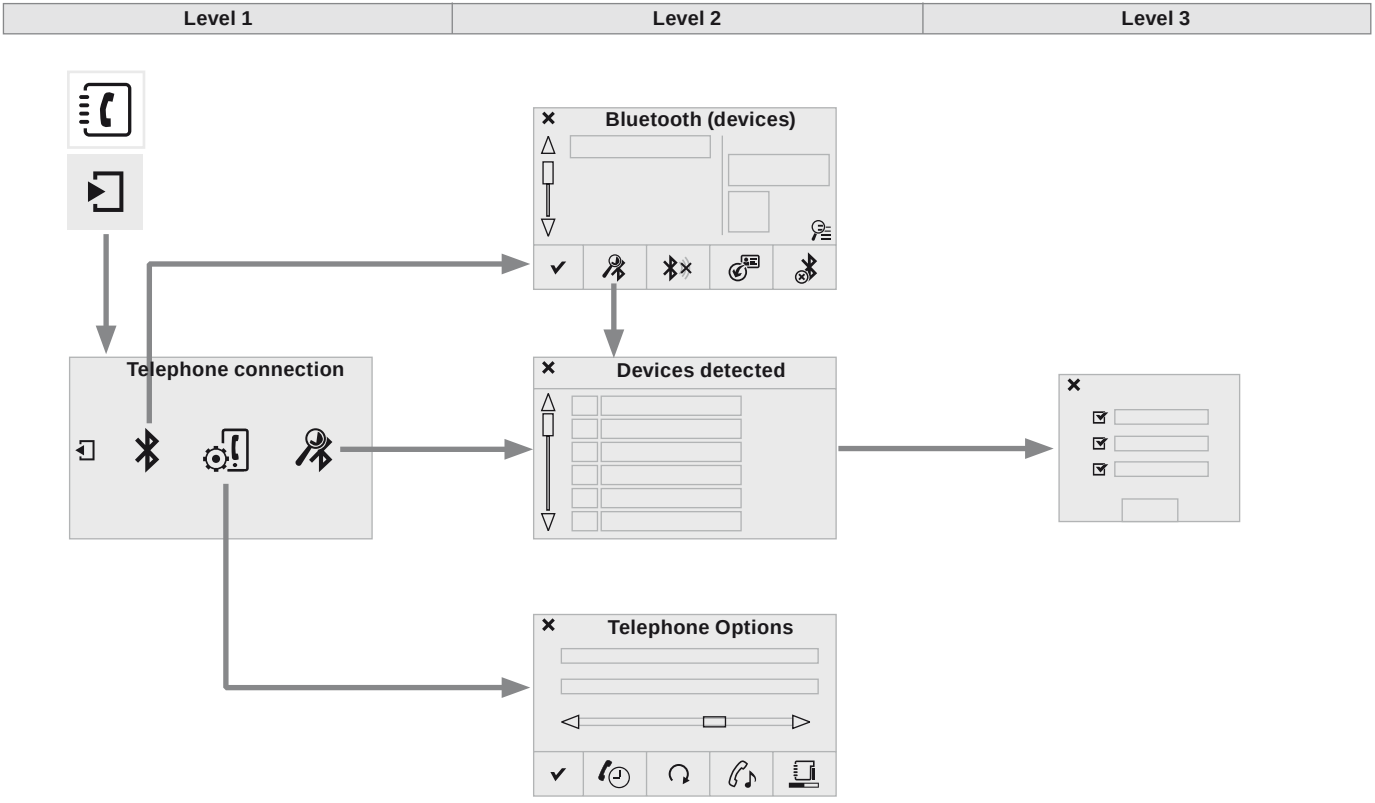
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Telephone


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Call log
06 06 06 06 06
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
Contacts
abc

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		Create	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Bluetooth (devices)
Telephone connection
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth connection		**Search**			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			**Connect / Disconnect**			Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
			**Update**			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			**Delete**			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			**Devices detected**	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone Options		**Put on hold**			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			**Update**			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
			**Ringtones**			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			**Memory info.**			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search for devices**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth® activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Managing contacts / entries



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of route settings.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf...). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

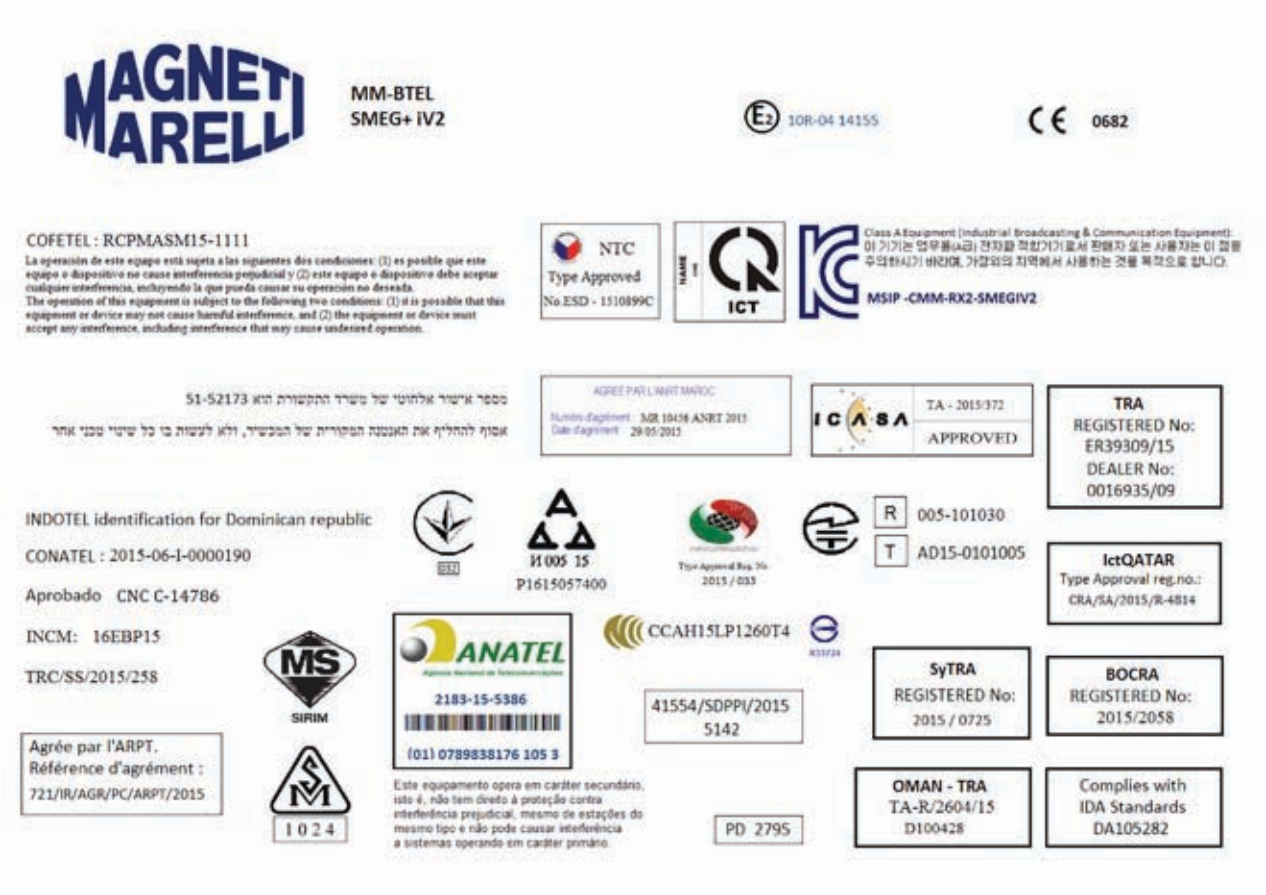
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
When the "All passengers" mode is selected, the distribution is not as I would like.	The choice of an "All passengers" distribution setting can be programmed.	Modify the distribution setting using the slider on the touch screen.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings (Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume) are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble and Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	


MAGNETI MARELLI
MM-BTEL
SMEG+ iV2
E2 10R-04 14155
CE 0682
COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111
La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
NTC
Type Approved
No.ESD - 1510899C
ICT
Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment)
이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
MSIP -CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2
מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-52173
אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המסורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 10436 ANRT 2015
Date d'agrément : 29/05/2015
IC A SA
TA - 2015/372
APPROVED
TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER39309/15
DEALER No:
0016935/09
INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic
CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190
Aprobado CNC C-14786
INCM: 16EBP15
TRC/SS/2015/258
И 005 15
P1615057400
Type Approval Reg. No.
2015 / 033
R 005-101030
T AD15-0101005
IctQATAR
Type Approval reg.no.:
CRA/SA/2015/R-4814
MS
SIRIM
ANATEL
2183-15-5386
(01) 0789838176 105 3
CCAH15LP1260T4
41554/SDPPI/2015
5142
SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
2015 / 0725
BOCRA
REGISTERED No:
2015/2058
Agrée par l'ARPT.
Référence d'agrément :
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015
1024
Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.
PD 2795
OMAN - TRA
TA-R/2604/15
D100428
Complies with
IDA Standards
DA105282

SUPPLEMENT

CITROËN

CITROËN C4



CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

Welcome

This document contains the latest updates to the handbook for your vehicle.
This information completes or cancels and replaces the information in the handbook.
First refer to the handbook for your vehicle.

Key

Safety warning.

Additional information.

Contribution towards protecting nature.

Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:

- To obtain an even air distribution, take care not to obstruct the exterior air intake grilles located at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents and the air outlets, as well as the air extractor located in the boot.
- Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the air conditioning system.
- Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.
  We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).
- To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the maintenance and warranty guide.
- If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A.
Depending on version and country of sale, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R134A. Gas capacity 0.425 kg (+/- 0.025 kg), GWP index 1 430 t (equivalent CO_2: 0.608 t).

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first ventilate the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Stop & Start

The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running.
To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you can temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with bio-fuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

E5
E10

Petrol that meets the EN228 standard, mixed with a bio-fuel meeting the EN15376 standard.

The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and can be obtained from filling stations.

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

The use of B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 is possible in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel...) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel fuel at low temperature

In temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in the summer diesel fuels may result in abnormal operation of the fuel supply system. To avoid this, the use of winter diesel fuels is recommended, keeping the tank topped up to more than 50% of its capacity.
If in spite of this you experience difficulties starting the engine in temperatures below -15°C (+5°F), simply leave the vehicle in a garage or a heated workshop for a while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle. In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific sales name…) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact your dealer.

Temporary puncture repair kit

This kit consists of a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

Tyre under-inflation detection

If the vehicle is fitted with tyre under-inflation detection, the under-inflation warning lamp will remain on after the wheel has been repaired until the system is reinitialised by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

Only the 12 V socket **at the front** of the vehicle allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair or inflate a tyre.
The other 12 V sockets in the vehicle are not suited to the use of the compressor.

Access to the kit



This kit is installed in the storage box, under the boot floor.

Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

Do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Repair procedure

- Switch off the ignition.
- Secure the speed limit sticker inside the vehicle.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- Connect the pipe from the compressor to the sealant cartridge.

Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



☞ Turn the sealant cartridge and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.

☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



☞ Connect the hose from the sealant cartridge to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the"**O**" position.

☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



☞ Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

☞ Switch on the ignition.

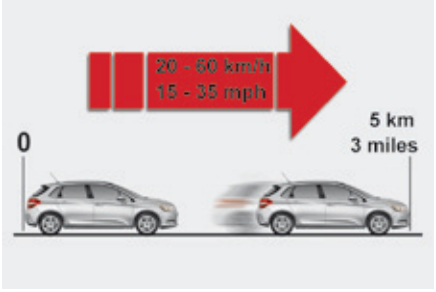


☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and leave it running until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bar.
The sealant product is injected into the tyre under pressure; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of splashing and stains).

If after around 5 to 7 minutes the pressure is not attained, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date is marked on the cartridge.
After use, do not discard the cartridge by the roadside, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Don't forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

☞ Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
☞ Remove the kit.



☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 15 and 35 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
☞ Stop to check the repair and the tyre pressure using the kit.

Checking / adjusting tyre pressures

You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and if necessary adjust the tyre pressures

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.



- Connect the compressor's plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.



- Start the compressor by placing the switch at the "**I**" position and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label.
  To deflate: press the black button on the compressor pipe, at the valve connector.
- Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.
- Remove the kit then stow it.

Emergency or assistance call





Localised Emergency Call

SOS

In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. Flashing of the green indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call"* centre.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the call.
The green indicator lamp goes off.

The green indicator lamp remains on (without flashing) when communication is established. It goes off at the end of the call.

Localised Emergency Call immediately locates your vehicle, makes contact with you in your language** and - if necessary - organises sending of the appropriate emergency services**. In countries where the service is not operational, or if the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is directed straight to the emergency services (112) without location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, and independently of the deployment of any airbags, an emergency call is made automatically.

i If you benefit from the CITROËN Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the Internet website for your country.

* Depending on the terms and conditions for the service, available from dealers, and technological and technical limits.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

Operation of the system



When the ignition is switched on, the green indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.



If the orange indicator lamp flashes then goes off: the system has a fault.

If the orange indicator lamp is on fixed: the back-up battery should be replaced.
In both cases, the emergency and assistance calls service may not work.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

The fault with the system does not prevent the vehicle being driven.

Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.
A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

Geo-location



You can deactivate geo-location by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geo-location, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the Brand's dealer network, we suggest that you have a dealer check and, if desired, modify the configuration of these services.
In a multi-lingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons, particularly to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

** Depending on the geographic cover for "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language selected by the owner of the vehicle.
The list of countries covered by Telematic services is available at dealers or on the website in your country.

2015 – DOCUMENTATION DE BORD

4Dconcept

Diadeis

Interak

CRÉATIVE TECHNOLOGIE

CITROËN

Anglais

AN. 15.C4.A041

7-inch touch screen tablet

GPS satellite navigation - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	4
Menus	5
Navigation	6
Navigation - Guidance	14
Traffic	18
Radio Media	20
Radio	26
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	28
Media	30
Settings	34
Connected services	42
MirrorLink™	42
CarPlay®	46
Telephone	48
Frequently asked questions	56

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.

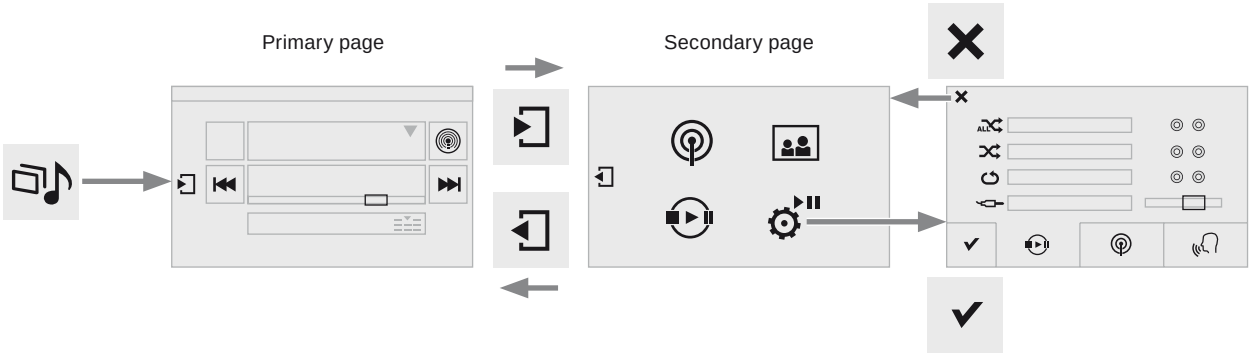
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations which require prolonged attention while the vehicle is stationary. The display of an energy economy mode message signals that electrical systems operating are going into standby.
Refer to the energy economy mode section.

First steps

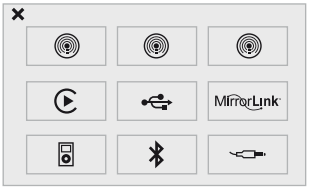
Use the buttons below the touch screen tablet for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen tablet.
Each menu is displayed in one or two pages (primary page and secondary page).

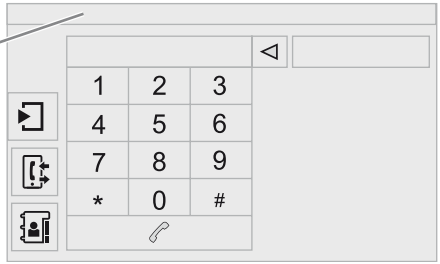


In very hot conditions, the system may go into stand-by (screen and sound completely off) for a minimum period of 5 minutes.



Short-cuts: using the virtual buttons in the upper band of the touch screen tablet, it is possible to go directly to the selection of audio source, the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).





Select the audio source (depending on version):

- FM / DAB / AM* stations.
- USB memory stick.
- Smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.
- CD player (located in front panel).
- Telephone connected by Bluetooth* and using Bluetooth* audio streaming.
- Media player connected to the auxiliary socket (jack, cable not supplied).



With the engine running, press to mute the sound.
With the ignition off, press to switch the system on.



Volume adjustment (each source is independent, including traffic announcements (TA) and navigation instructions).

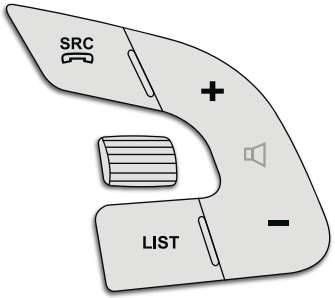
In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment drops.

The screen is of the "resistive" type, it is necessary to press firmly, particularly for "flick" gestures (scrolling through a list, moving the map...). A simple wipe will not be enough. Pressing with more than one finger is not recognised.
The screen can be used when wearing gloves. This technology allows use at all temperatures.

To clean the screen, use a soft non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) without any additional product.
Do not use pointed objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Steering mounted controls



SRC

Media: change the multimedia source.
Telephone: start a call.
Call in progress: access to the telephone menu (End call, Secret mode, Hands-free mode).
Telephone, press and hold: reject an incoming call, end a call in progress; other than a call in progress, access to the telephone menu.

Radio, turn: automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media, turn: previous / next track.
Press: confirm a selection.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio, press and hold: update the list of stations received.

\+

Increase volume.

–

Decrease volume.

Menus

Navigation

(Depending on equipment)



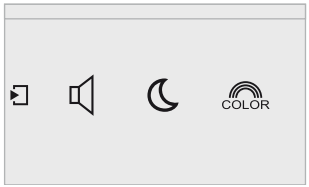
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

Radio Media



Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

Settings



Adjust the settings for sound (balance, ambience, ...), colour schemes and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).

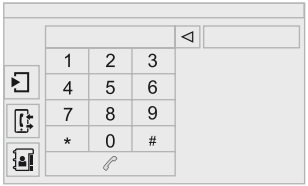
Connected services

(Depending on equipment)



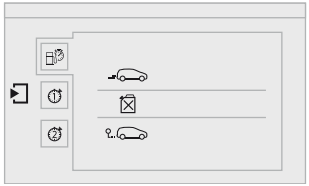
Operate certain applications on your smartphone via MirrorLink™ or CarPlay®.

Telephone



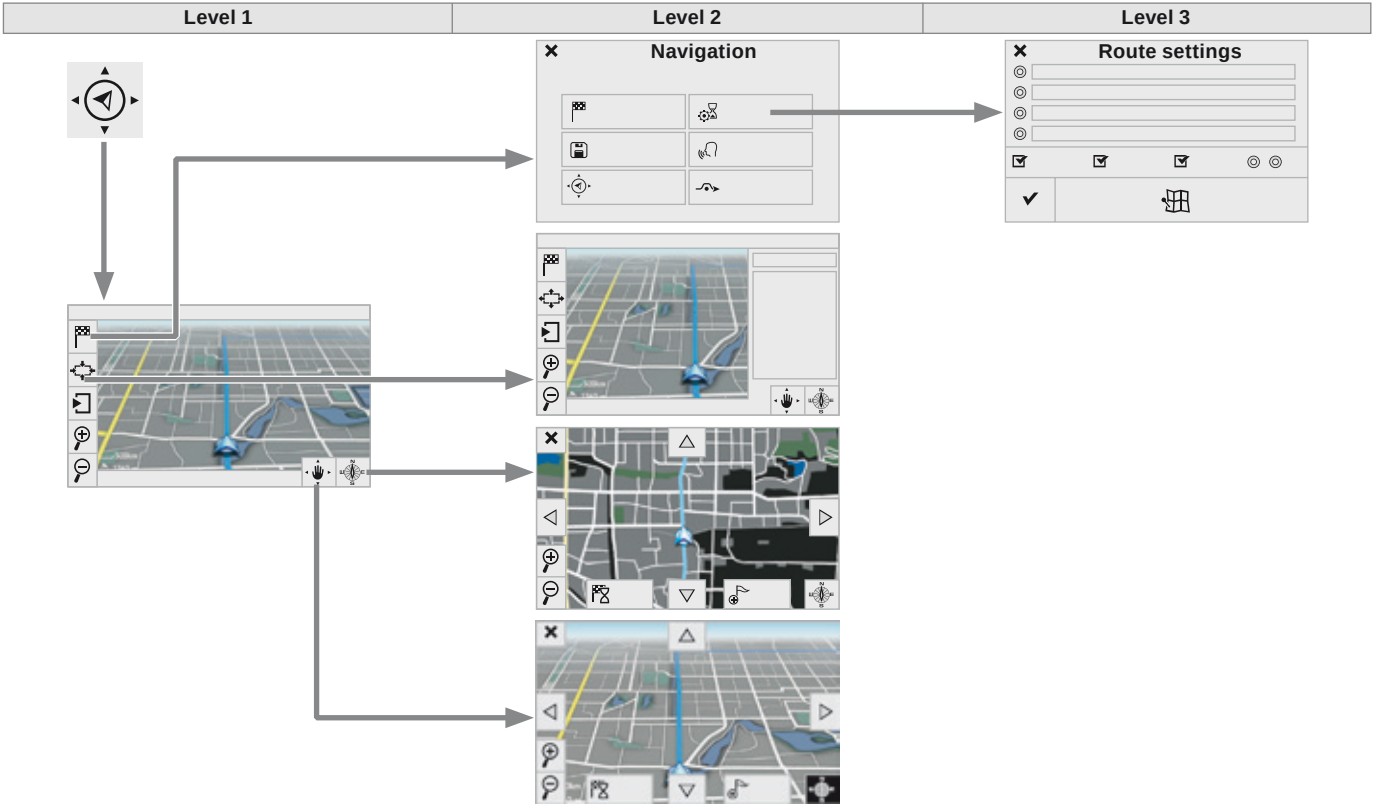
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®.
Access to the CarPlay® function after connection of your smartphone by USB cable.

Driving



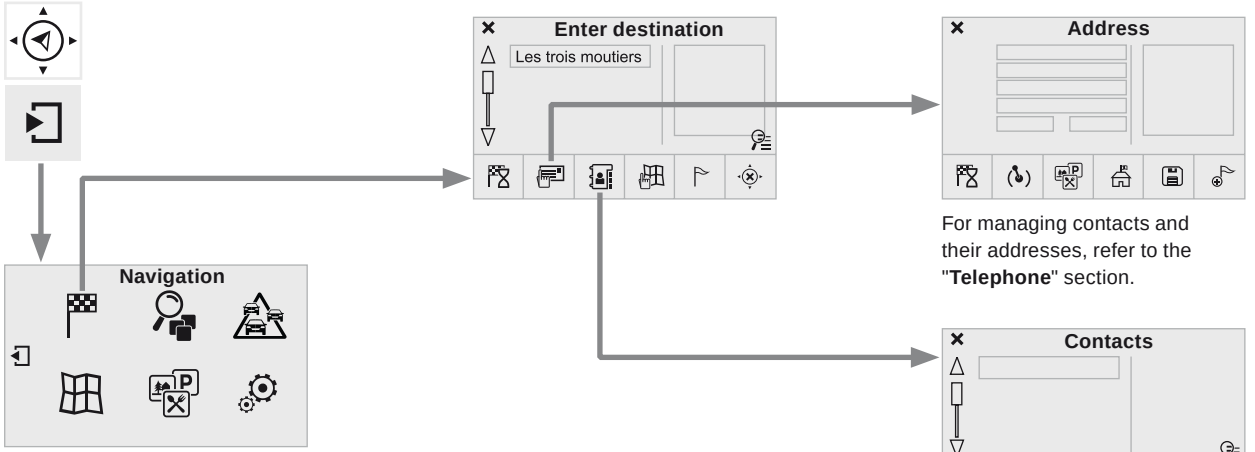
Access to the trip computer.
Activate, deactivate or enter settings for certain vehicle functions.

Navigation



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation ↓ Settings Navigation		**Enter destination**			Display recent destinations
			Route settings		Fastest	Choose the navigation criteria. The map displays the route chosen according to these criteria.
					Shortest	
					Time/distance	
					Ecological	
					Tolls	
					Ferries	
					Traffic	
					Strict-Close	
					Show route on map	Display the map and start navigation.
				✔	Confirm	Save the options.
			Save current location			Save the current address.
			Stop navigation			Delete the navigation information.
			Voice synthesis			Choose the volume for voice and announcement of street names.
			Diversion			Detour from your initial route by a determined distance.
	Navigation					Display in text mode
						Zoom in.
						Zoom out.
				▷		Display in full screen mode. Use the arrows to move the map.
						Switch to 2D map.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3

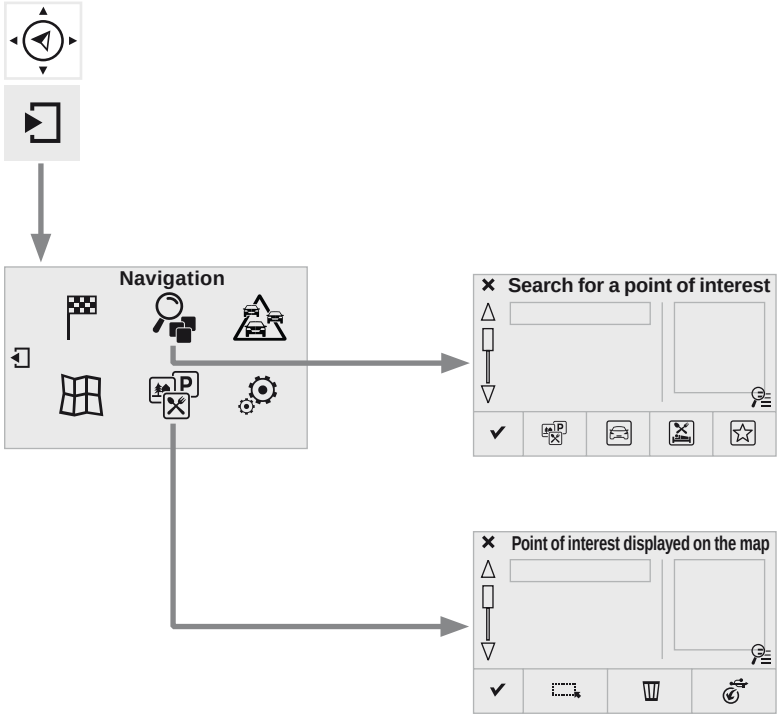


For managing contacts and their addresses, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

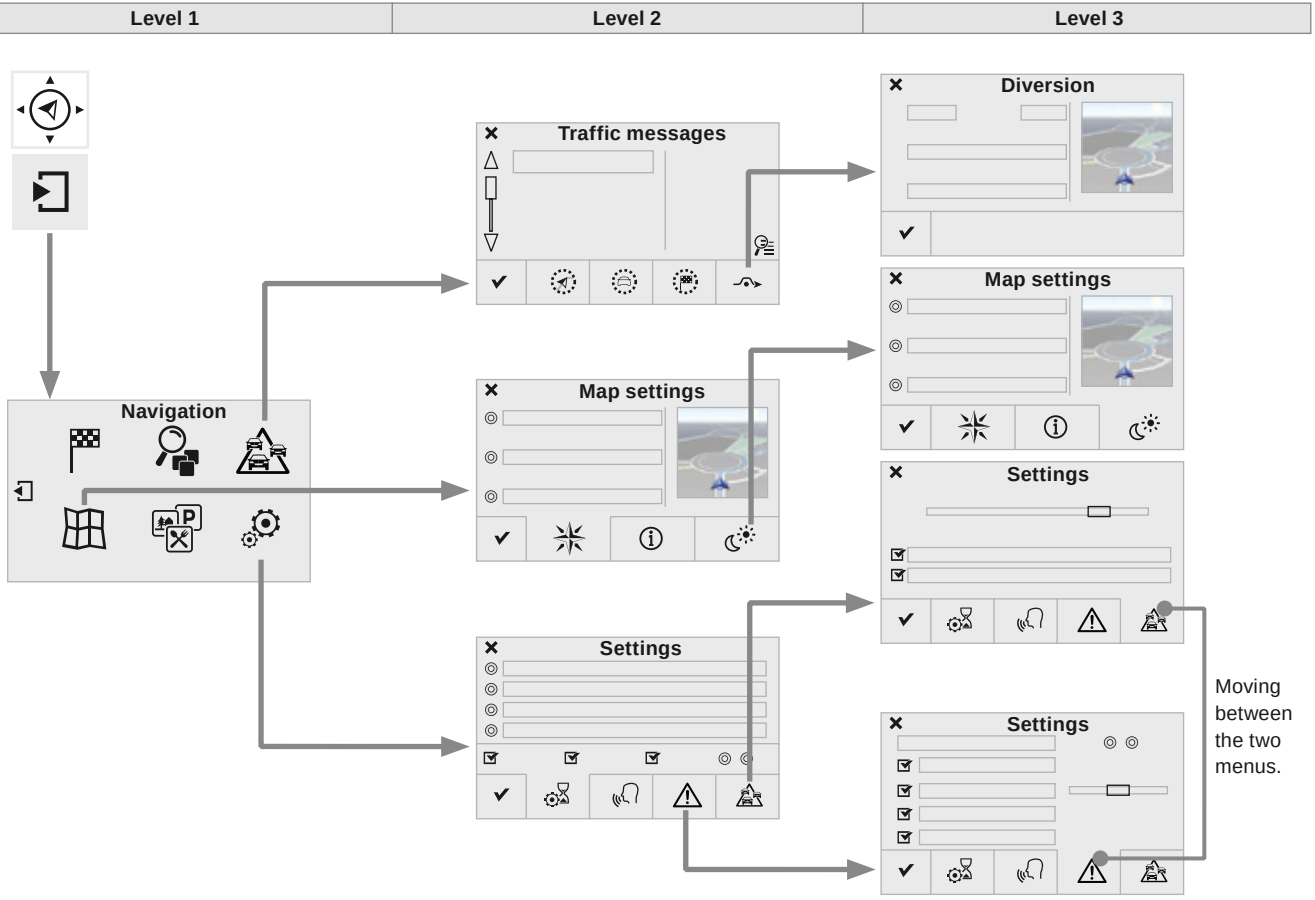
To use the telephone functions, refer to the "**Telephone**" section.

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Navigation Secondary page Enter destination		**Address**		Current loc.	Address settings
					Point of interest	
					Town center	
					Save	Save the current address.
					Add waypoint	Add a waypoint to the route.
					Navigate to	Press to calculate the route.
			Contacts		Addresses	Select a contact then calculate the route.
					View	
					Navigate to	
					Search for contact	
					Call	
			On the map			Display the map and zoom to view the roads.
			Itinerary			Create, add or delete a waypoint or view the itinerary.
			Stop			Delete navigation information.
			Navigate to			Press to calculate the route.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3	Comments
	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Search for POI		All POIs		List of categories available. After choosing the category, select the points of interest.
			Motor		
			Dining/hotels		
			Personal		
		✔	Search		Save the settings.
	Navigation ↓ Secondary page ↓ Show POIs		Select all		Choose the display settings for POIs.
			Delete		
			Import POIs		
		✔	Confirm		Save the options.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Navigation
Traffic messages
Map settings
Settings
Diversion
Map settings
Settings
Settings
Moving between the two menus.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Comments
Navigation → Secondary page → Traffic messages	On the route		Settings for the choice of messages and the filter radius.
	Around vehicle		
	Near destination		
	Detour	◎ Detour over a distance	
		◎ Recalculate route	
	✔ Finish		Save your selections.
Navigation → Secondary page → Map settings	Orientation	◎ Flat view north heading	Choose the display and orientation of the map.
		◎ Flat view vehicle heading	
		◎ Perspective view	
	Maps		
	Aspect	◎ "Day" map colour	
		◎ "Night" map colour	
		◎ Automatic day/night	
	✔ Confirm		Save the settings.
Navigation → Secondary page → Settings	Route settings		Enter settings and choose the volume for the voice and announcement of street names.
	Voice		
	Alarm!		
	Traffic options		
	✔ Confirm		Save your selections.

Navigation - Guidance

Choosing a new destination

Towards a new destination



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address** .



Select the **"Country:"** from the list offered, then in the same way the "**City:**" or its post code, the "**Road:**", the "**N°:**".
Confirm each time.



Select "**Save**" to save the address entered as a contact entry.
The system allows up to 200 entries.



Select "**Navigate to**".



Choose the navigation criteria: "**Fastest**" or "**Shortest**" or "**Time/ distance**" or "**Ecological**".



Choose the restriction criteria: "**Tolls**", "**Ferries**", "**Traffic**", "**Strict**", "**Close**".



Select "**Confirm**".

Or



Press on "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.



To delete navigation information, press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Stop navigation**".



To resume navigation press on "**Settings**".



Press on "**Resume guidance**".

Towards a recent destination

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".



Select an address from the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a contact

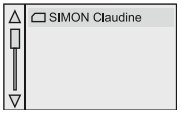
To be able to use navigation "towards a contact in the directory", it is first necessary to enter the address for your contact.

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Enter destination**".

Select "**Contacts**".



Select a destination from the contacts in the list offered.

Select "**Navigate to**".

Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" to start navigation.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



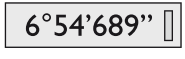
Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**Address**".



Enter the "**Longitude:**" then the "**Latitude:**".



Select "**Navigate to**".



Select the criteria then "**Confirm**" or press "**Show route on map**" to start navigation.

Towards a point on the map



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Enter destination**".



Select "**On the map**".

Zooming in on the map shows points with information.

A long press on a point opens its content.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Search for POI**".



Select "**All POIs**",

Or



"**Motor**",

Or



"**Dining/hotels**".

An annual mapping update allows new points of interest to be presented to you.
You can also update the Risk areas / Danger areas every month.
The detailed procedure is available on: http://citroen.navigation.com.

Risk areas / Danger zone alert settings



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Alarm!**" (Alert).

It is then possible to activate Risk areas alerts then:

- "Audible warning"
- "Alert only when navigating"
- "Alert only for overspeed"
- "Display speed limits"
- Timing: the choice of timing allows the time before giving a Risk areas alert to be defined.



Select "**Confirm**".

! This series of alerts and displays is only available if Risk areas have first been downloaded and installed on the system.

Traffic

Traffic information

Display of messages



Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Traffic messages**".

Choose filter settings for:



"**On the route**",

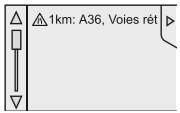


"**Around**",



"**Near destination**", filters to fine-tune the list of messages.

Press again to remove the filter.



Select the message from the list offered.

Select the magnifying glass to have voice information.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages on GPS-Navigation contain traffic information transmitted in real time.

Setting filters

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Traffic options**".

Select:
- "**Be advised of new messages**",
- "**Speak messages**".

Then enter the filter radius.

Select "**Confirm**".

We recommend a filter radius of:
- 12 miles (20 km) in urban areas,
- 30 miles (50 km) on motorways.

Receiving TA messages

Press on **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

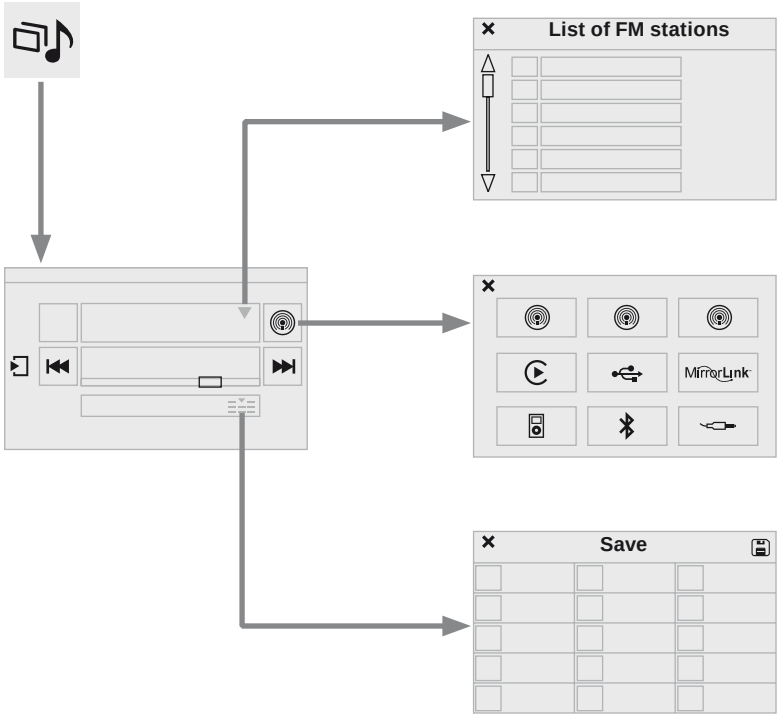
Select "**Voice**".

Off On Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic (TA)**".

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback of the audio source resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

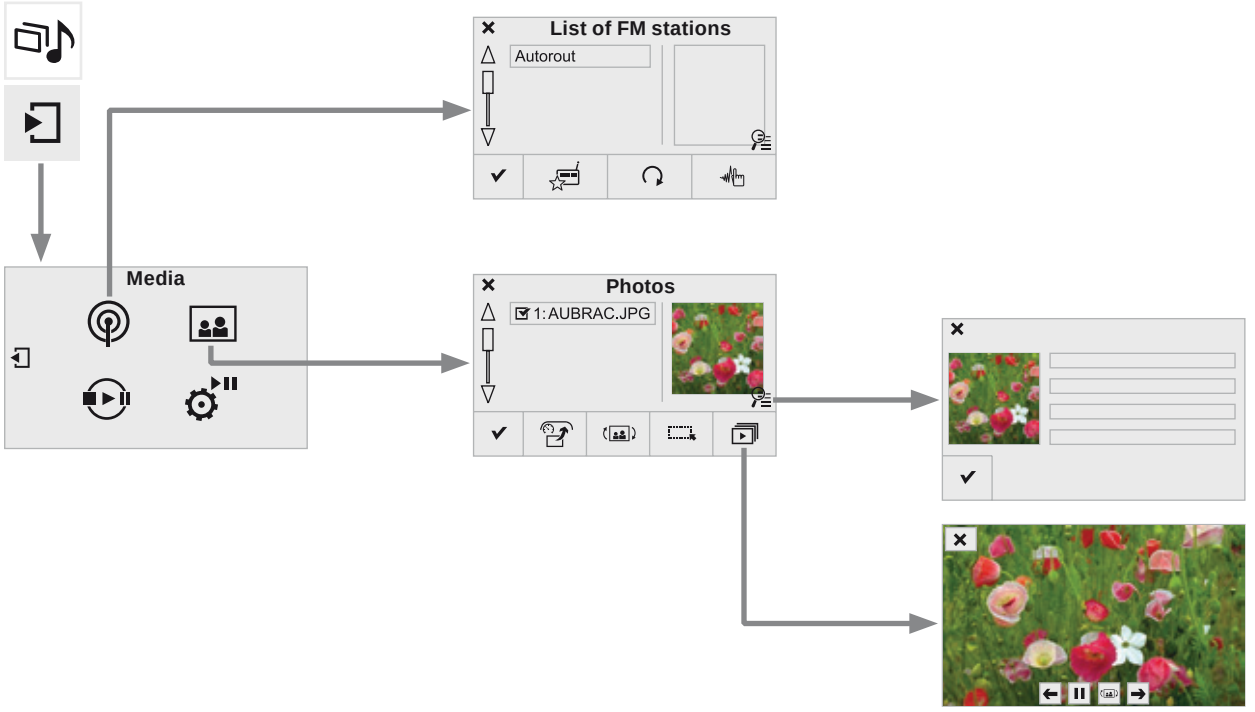
Radio Media

Level 1	Level 2

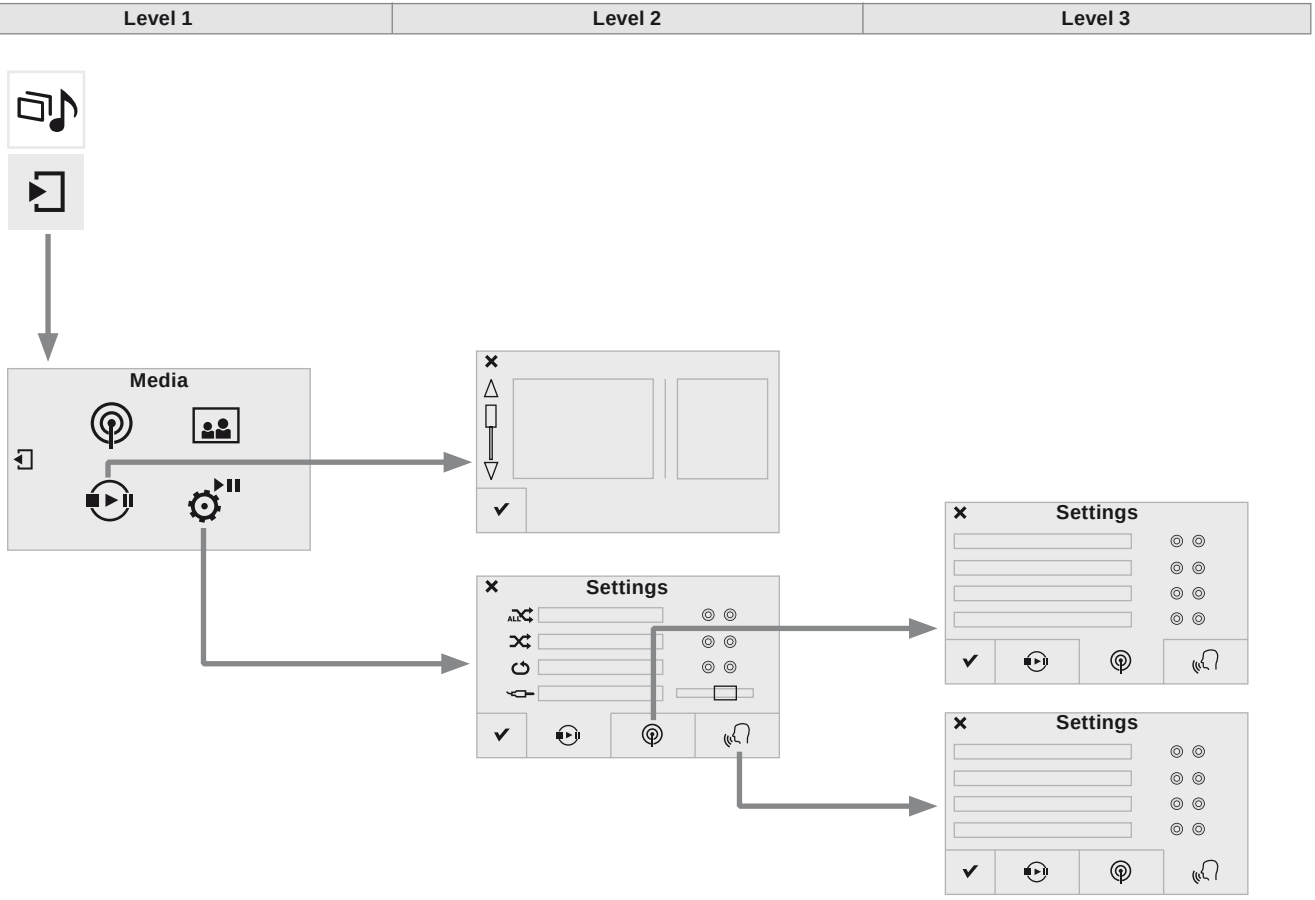


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **List**	▼	**List of FM stations**	Press on a radio station to select it.
	Radio Media ↓ **Source**	Radio FM	**FM Radio**	Select change of source.
		Radio DAB	**DAB Radio**	
		Radio AM	**AM Radio**	
			USB	
			CD	
		MirrorLink	**MirrorLink™**	
			CarPlay®	
			iPod	
			Bluetooth	
			AUX	
	Radio Media ↓ **Save**			Press an empty location to Save it.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3



Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media → Secondary page → Radio list		**Save**			Press a radio station to select it.
			Update list			Update the list of stations received.
			Frequency			Enter the desired radio frequency.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.
	Radio Media → Secondary page → Photos		**Home screen**			Display the selected photo in the home page.
			Rotate			Rotate the photo 90°.
			Select all			Select all the photos in the list. Press again to deselect.
			Slideshow	←	Previous photo.	Display the photos in sequence, full-screen. The system supports the following image formats: .gif, .jpg, .bmp, .png.
				⏸ ▷	Pause / Play.	
				→	Next photo.	
		✔	**Full screen**			Display the selected photo full-screen.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Media
Settings
Settings
Settings

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Media list**					Presentation of the last media used.
	Radio Media ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Settings**		**Media** ↓ **Settings**		Shuffle (all tracks)	Choose the play settings.
					Shuffle (current album)	
					Repeat	
					Aux. amplification	
			Radio ↓ **Settings**		RDS options	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					DAB/FM station tracking	
					Display Radio Text	
					Digital radio slideshow display	
			Announcements ↓ **Settings**		Traffic announcements (TA)	Activate or deactivate the settings.
					News - Weather	
					Sport - Programm info	
					Flash - Unforeseen events	
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

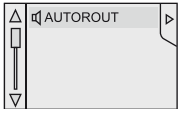
Select "**List**" in the primary page.

Or

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.



Select a radio station from the list offered.

Select "**Update list**" to refresh the list.

To select a preset radio station.

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Save**".



Select a preset radio station in the list.

If necessary, select change of source.



Select "**FM Radio**".



Or

"**AM Radio**".



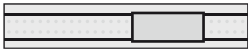
! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnel, car park, below ground...) may prevent reception, even in RDS station tracking mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing a radio frequency

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



By automatic frequency search



Press ◂ or ▸ to move the cursor for an automatic search down or up for a radio frequency.

THEN



Select change source.



Select "**FM Radio**".

Or



"**AM Radio**".

OR

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Press on **Frequency**.

THEN

Enter the frequency in full (e.g.: 92.10 MHz) using the keypad then "**Confirm**".

FRANCE BLEU

Changing radio station

Pressing the name of the current radio station brings up a list.
To change radio station press the name of the desired station.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency (refer to the corresponding section).

Press on "**Save**" (preset).

Mémoire 1

Select a number in the list to preset the previously chosen radio station.
A long press on a number saves (presets) the station.

Or

A press on this button presets all of the stations one after the other.

Recalling preset stations

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Save**" (preset).

Activating / Deactivating RDS

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

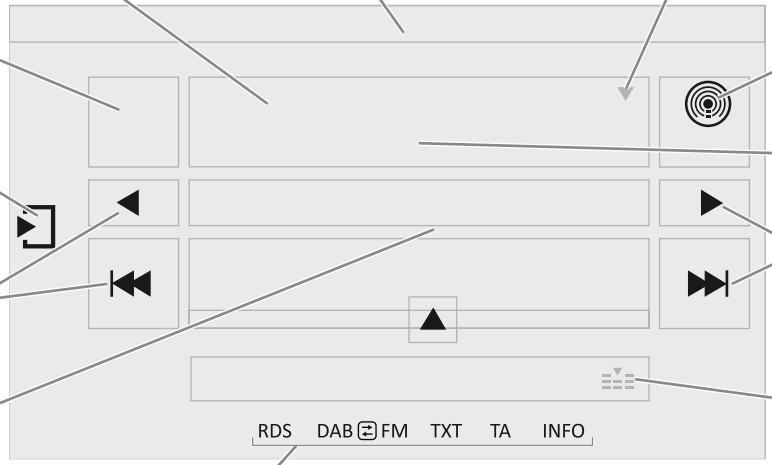
Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Radio**".

Off On Activate/deactivate "**RDS options**".

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100 % of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio



Display of the name of the current station.

Short-cut: access to the choice of audio source and the list of stations (or titles, depending on the source).

Select the radio station.

Any thumbnail broadcast by the station.

Select the audio source. Display the "DAB" band.

Display of "Radiotext" for the current station.

Secondary page.

Next "Multiplex". Next radio station.

Previous "Multiplex". Previous radio station.

Preset stations, buttons 1 to 15. Short press: select the preset radio station. Long press: preset a radio station.

Display the name and number of the "multiplex" service being used.

Display of options:
if active but not available, the display will be greyed out,
if active and available, the display will be blank.

If the "DAB" radio station being listened to is not available on "FM", the "DAB FM" option is greyed out.

NewsService Journaline®

Journaline® is a text-based information service designed for digital radio systems.
It provides text-based information structured around topics and sub-topics.
This service is available from the "LIST OF DAB STATIONS" page.

Digital radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception and also the graphical display of current information on the radio station being listened to. Select "List" in the primary page.
The range of multiplexes available is displayed in alphabetical order.



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select change of source.



Select "**DAB Radio**".



Select "**List**" in the primary page.

or
Select "**Radio list**" in the secondary page.

Select the radio station from the list offered.

DAB / FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB/FM station tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Settings**".



Select "**Radio**".



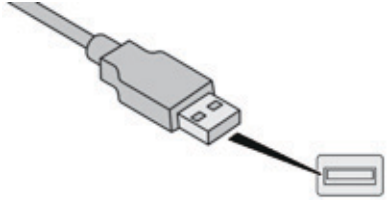
Select "**Digital/FM auto tracking**" then "**Confirm**".

If "DAB/FM station tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB/FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM station tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or on connection of a USB memory stick. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)



This source is only available if the "Auxiliary socket" option has been activated in the "Media" settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player...) to the auxiliary Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

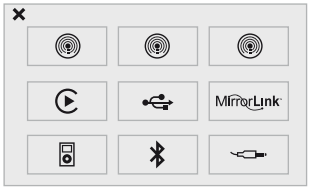
Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press on **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

FM

Select change of source.



Choose the source.

SRC

The steering mounted **SRC** (source) button can be used to go to the next media source, available if the source is active.

Press on **OK** to confirm the selection.

Information and advice

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma, .aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other type of file (.mp4, etc.) can be played.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

In order to be able to play a recorded CDR or CDRW, when recording it is preferable to select the ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet standard.
If the disc is recorded in another format it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same recording standard is always used for an individual disc, with as low a speed as possible (4x maximum) for optimum sound quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

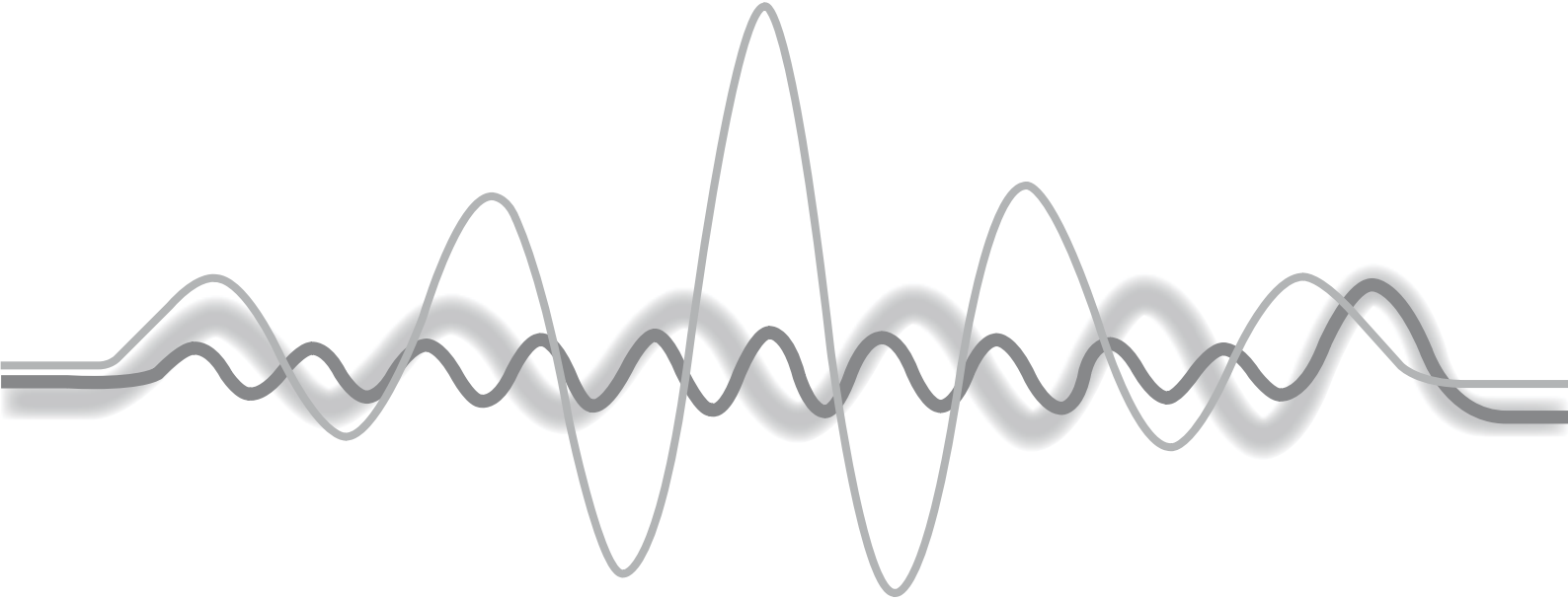
Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT 32 (file allocation table).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

i It is recommended that the USB cable for the portable device is used.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using of special characters (e.g. " " ? ; ù) to avoid any playing and displaying problems.

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adaptor cable is not supplied.
Control of the peripheral device is with the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied).



Bluetooth® audio streaming

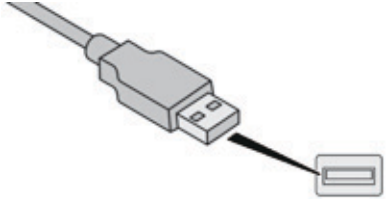
Streaming allows audio files on your telephone to be played through the vehicle's speakers.

Connect the telephone: see the "**Telephone**" section, then "**Bluetooth**".
Choose the "**Audio**" or "**All**" profile.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the peripheral device or by using the audio system buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.
It is recommended that you activate "**Repeat**" on the Bluetooth® peripheral.

Connecting Apple® players



Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

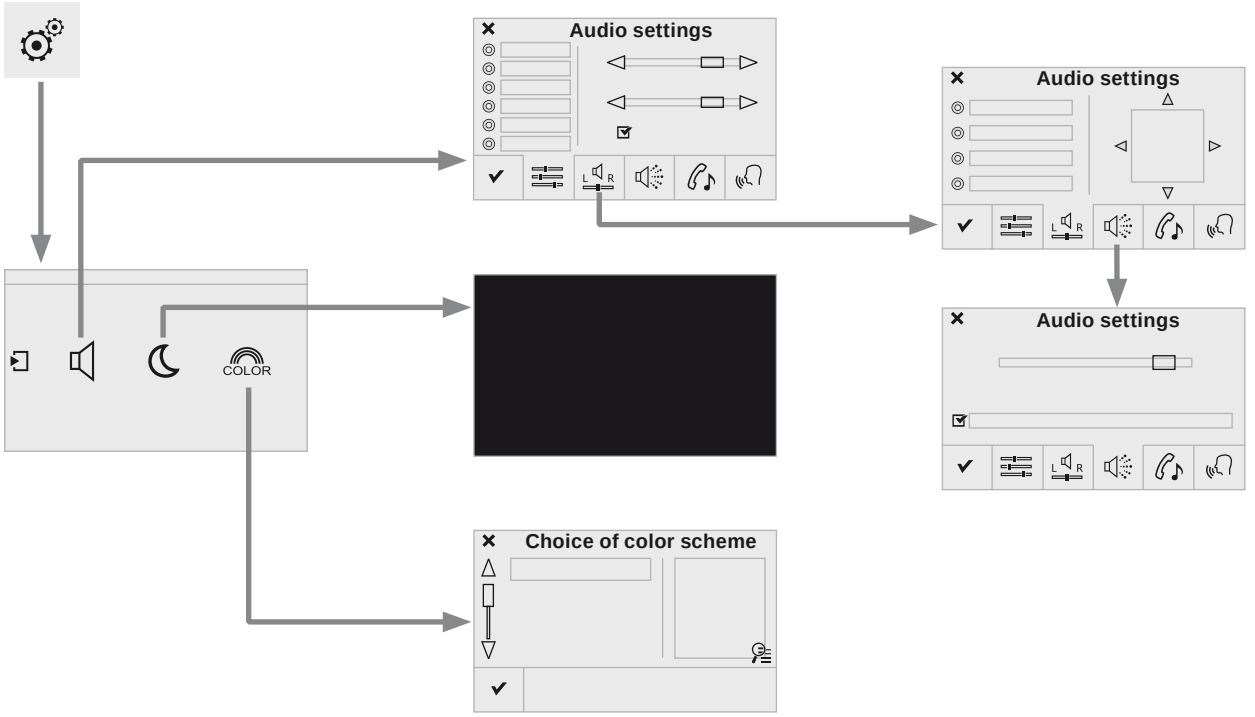
Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

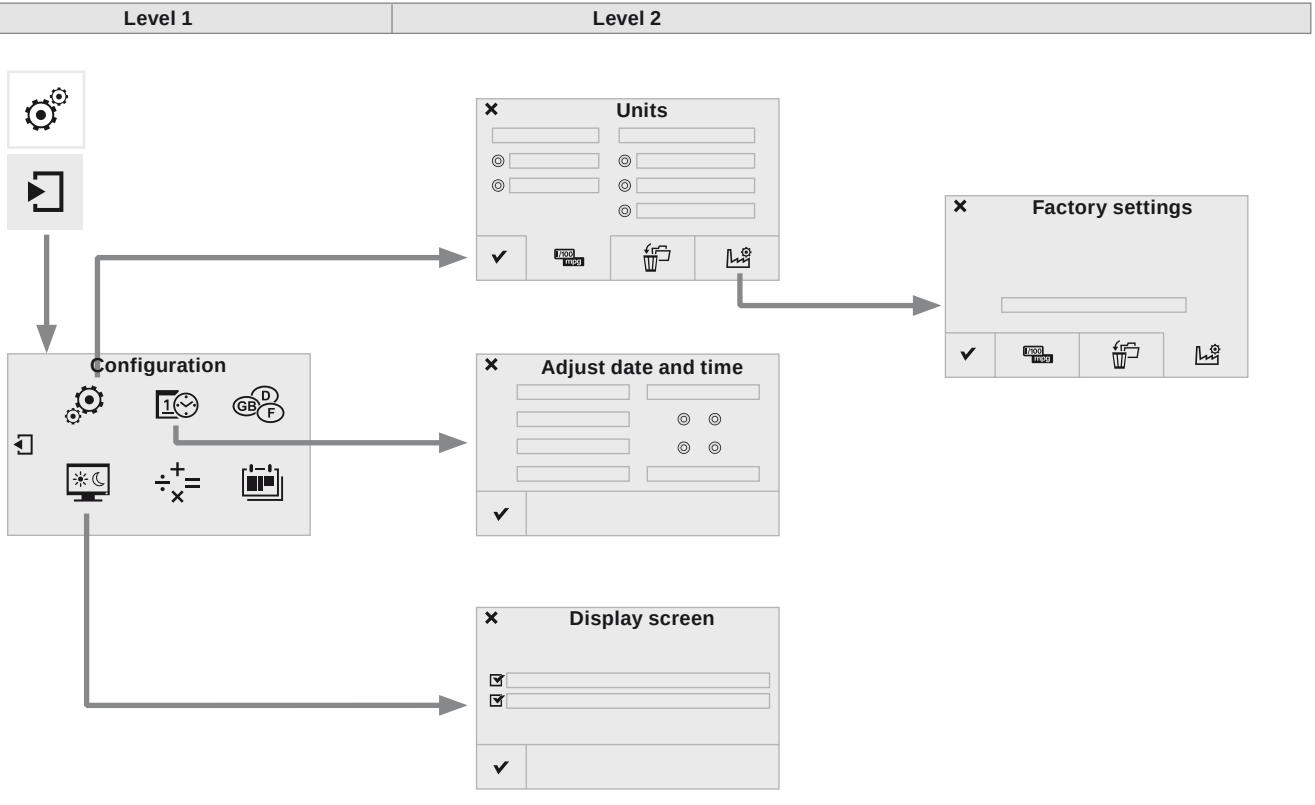
The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Settings

Level 1	Level 2

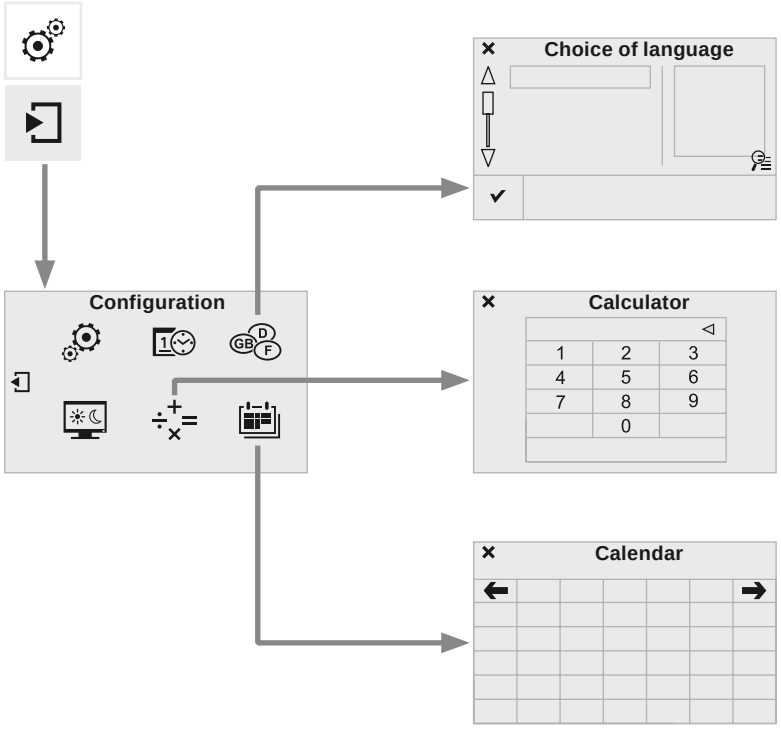


Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → Audio settings		**Ambience**	Choose the sound ambience.
			Balance	Sound distribution using the Arkamys® system.
			Sound effects	Set the volume or activate the link to vehicle speed.
			Ringtones	Set the telephone ringtone and volume.
			Voice	Set the volume and voice for speaking street names
		✔	**Confirm**	Save your settings.
	Settings → Turn off screen	■		Function that turns off the display. Pressing the screen reactivates it.
	Settings → Color schemes		**Confirm**	Choose the color scheme, then confirm to save the setting.


Level 1
Level 2
Configuration
Units
Factory settings
Adjust date and time
Display screen

Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	Settings → **Secondary page** → **System Settings**		**Units**	Set the units used to display distance, fuel consumption and temperature.
			Delete data	Select the desired data in the list then press Delete.
			Factory settings	Return to factory settings.
		✔	**Confirm**	Save the settings.
	Settings → **Secondary page** → **Time/Date**	✔	**Confirm**	Set the date and time then confirm.
	Settings → **Secondary page** → **Screen settings**		**Activate automatic text scrolling**	Activate or deactivate the setting then confirm.
			Activate animations	
		✔	**Confirm**	

Level 1	Level 2



Level 1		Level 2		Comments
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Languages**	✔	**Confirm**	Select the language then confirm.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calculator**			Select the calculator.
	**Settings** ↓ **Secondary page** ↓ **Calendar**			Select the calendar.

Audio settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".



Select "**Ambience**"

Or



"**Balance**"

Or



"**Sound effects**"

Or



"**Ringtones**"

Or



"**Voice**".

The distribution (or spatialisation using the Arkamys® system) of sound is an audio process that allows the audio quality to be adapted to the number of passengers in the vehicle.
Available only with the 6-speaker configuration.

The audio settings (**Ambience**, **Bass:**, **Treble:** and **Loudness**) are different and independent for each sound source.
The settings for **Distribution** and **Balance** are common to all sources.

- "**Ambience**" (choice of 6 musical ambiences)
- "**Bass:**"
- "**Treble:**"
- "**Loudness**" (Activate/Deactivate)
- "**Distribution**" ("**Driver**", "**All passengers**", "**Front only**")
- "**Audible response from touch screen**"
- "**Volume linked to speed**" (Activate/Deactivate)

On-board audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises sound distribution in the passenger compartment.

Color schemes



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select the color scheme in the list then "**Confirm**".

At each change of color scheme the system restarts, showing a black screen for a few moments.

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the color scheme is only possible with the vehicle stationary.

Modifying system settings



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**System Settings**".



Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.



Select "**Delete data**" to delete the list of recent destinations, personal points of interest, contacts in the list.



Choose the item then select "**Delete**".



Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the original settings.



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Screen settings**".



Activate or deactivate "**Activate automatic text scrolling**" and "**Activate animations**".



Press on **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page



Select "**Time/Date**" to change the time zone, synchronisation with GPS, the time and its format, then the date.

The system does not manage changes between summer time and winter time automatically (according to country).



Select "**Languages**" to change language.

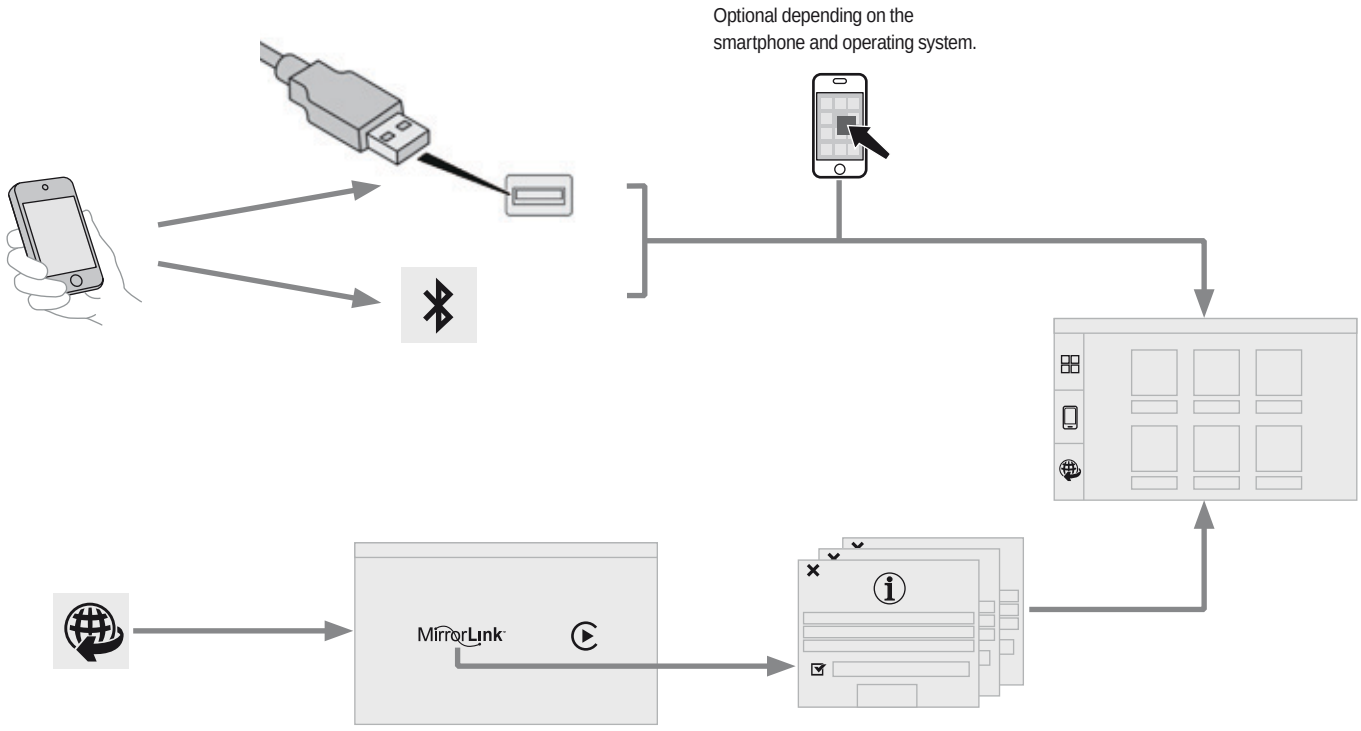


Select "**Calculator**" to display a calculator.



Select "**Calendar**" to display a calendar.

Connected services
MirrorLink™



MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the MirrorLink™ technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
The principles and standards are constantly evolving. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, the smartphone must be unlocked; update the operating system of your smartphone as well as the date and time in the smartphone and the system.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

Please note:
- if your smartphone is supported, to make it "MirrorLink™" compatible, some phone manufacturers nevertheless invite you to first download a dedicated application.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press on "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.

Press on "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Start the application on the smartphone (optional, depending on the smartphone and operating system).

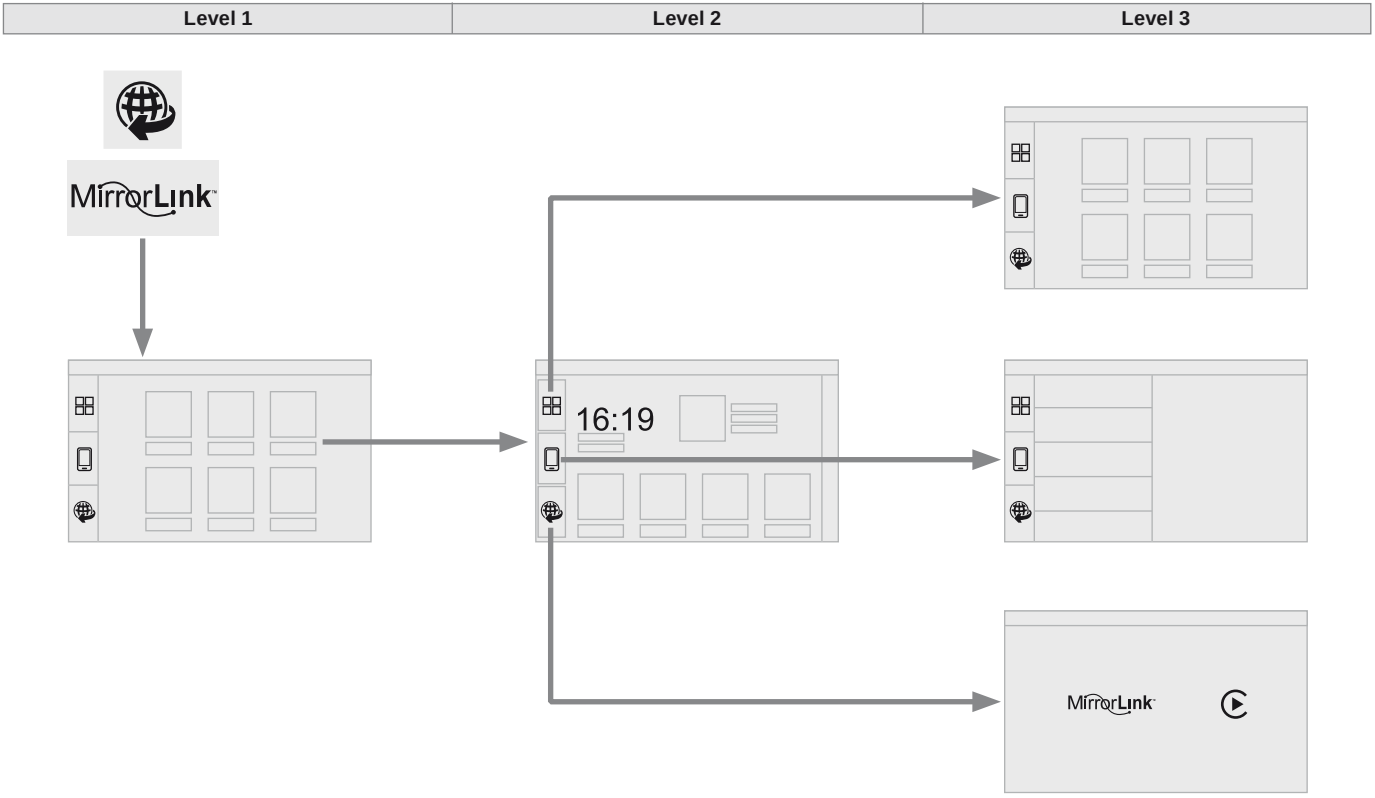
OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and end the connection.

Once connection is established, an page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
If only one application has been downloaded to the smartphone, it starts automatically.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons

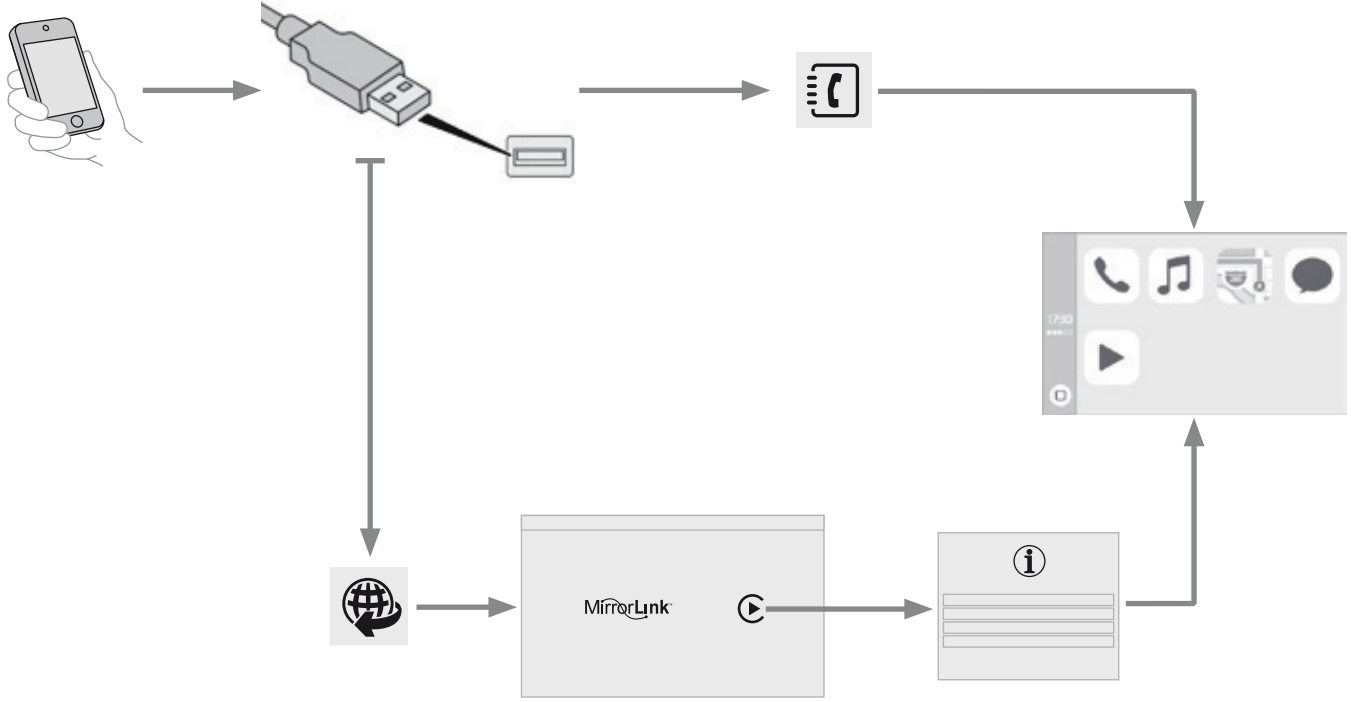
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.
Voice recognition requires a compatible smartphone connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth®.


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
MirrorLink
16:19
MirrorLink

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Connected services ↓ MirrorLink™					Access or return to the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.
						Access to a menu list depending on the application chosen. "Back": abandon the current operation, go up one level. "Home": access or return to the "Car mode" page.
						Access to the "Connected services" primary page.

CarPlay®



CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a smartphone allows applications on a smartphone that are adapted to the CarPlay® technology to be displayed in the vehicle's screen.
As the principles and standards are constantly evolving, it is recommended that you update the operating system of your smartphone.
For the list of eligible smartphones, connect to the brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone is charged while connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Connected services**" to display the primary page.



Press on "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

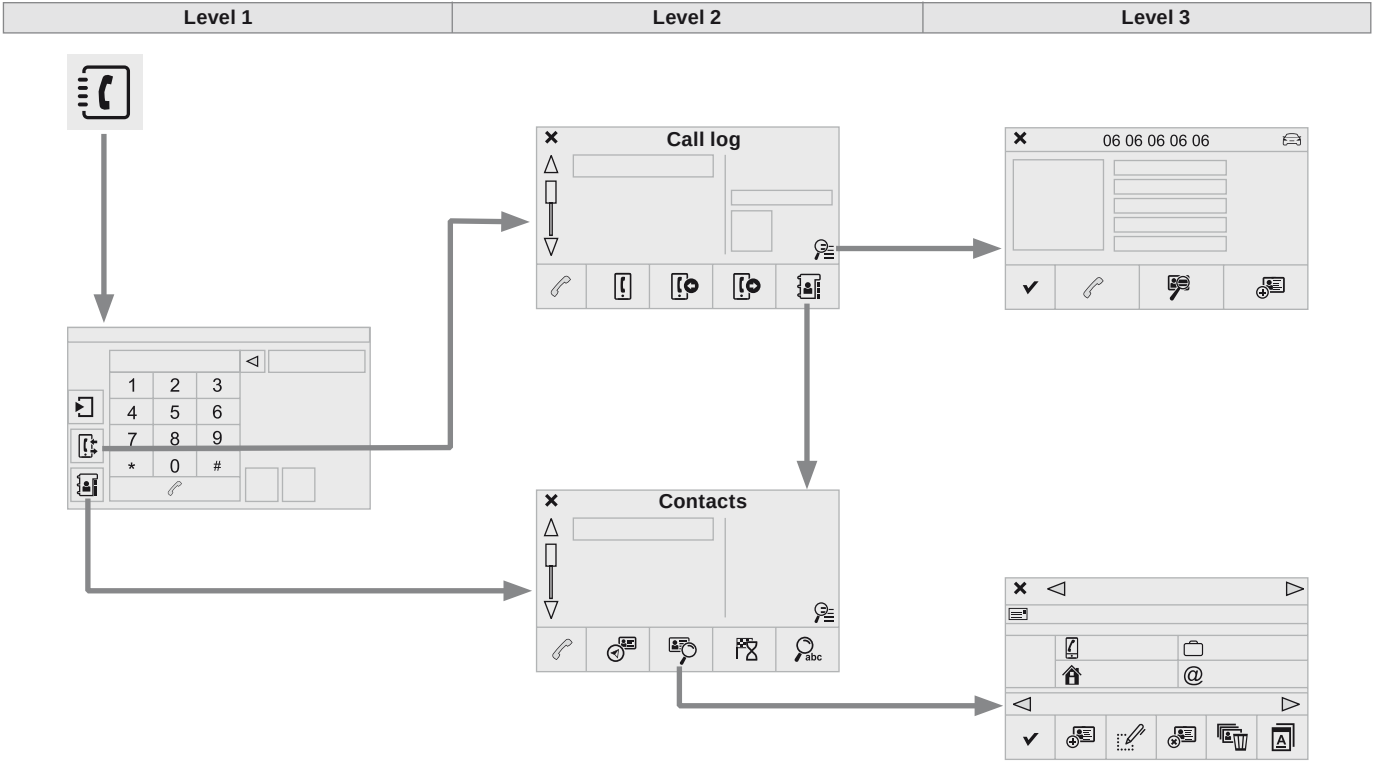
During the procedure, one or more screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed on connection.

When the telephone menu is displayed, on connecting the USB cable the display changes automatically to CarPlay mode.
If a menu other than the telephone menu is displayed, on connecting the USB cable a message is displayed in the upper banner indicating the activation of the CarPlay mode.
Press on Open to display the CarPlay mode.

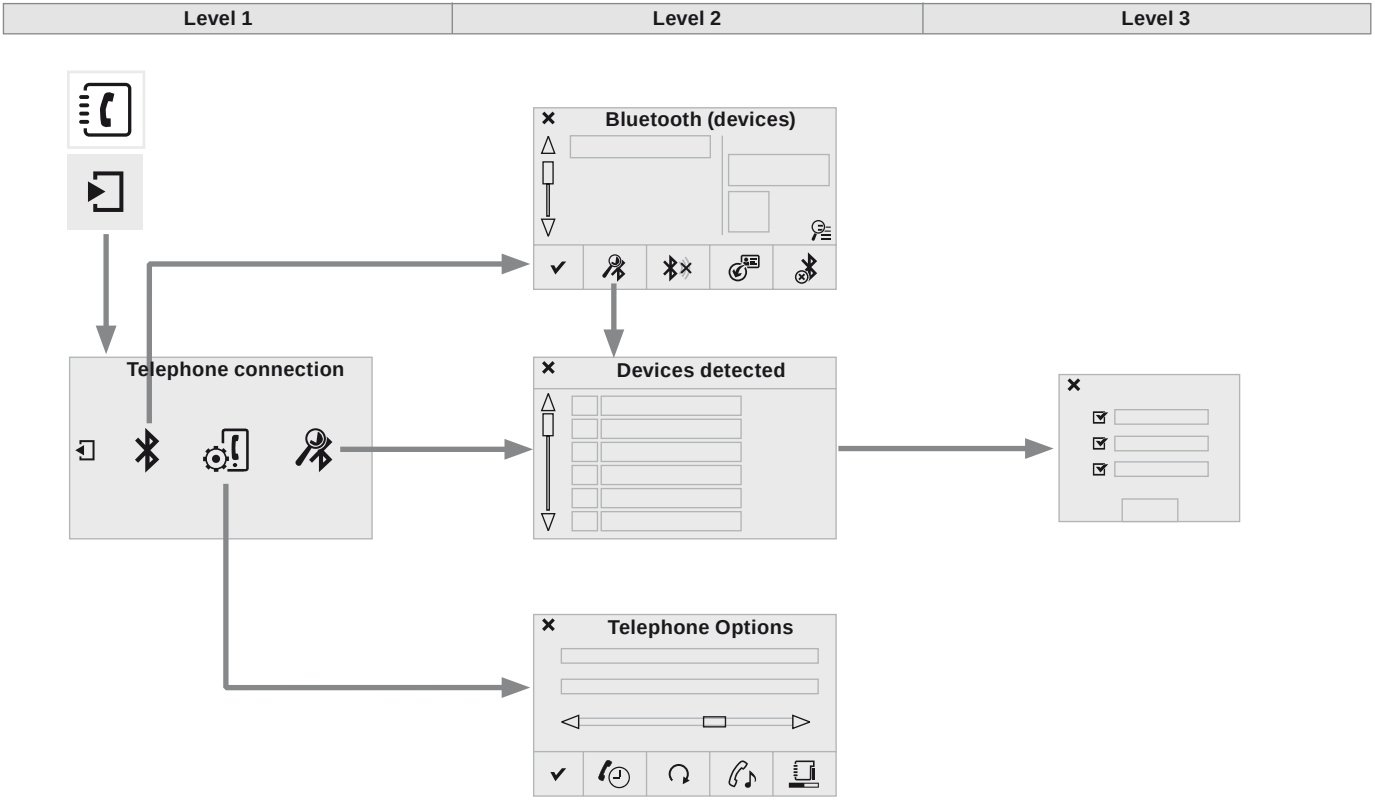
Voice recognition

Press the end of the lighting control stalk to start voice recognition of your smartphone via the system.

Telephone


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Call log
06 06 06 06 06
1 2 3
4 5 6
7 8 9
* 0 #
Contacts
abc

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone → Call log		All calls			After making choices, start the call.
			Incoming calls			
			Outgoing calls			
			Contacts			
			Magnifying glass		View	
					Create	
			Call			
	Telephone → Contacts		Addresses			After making choices, start the call.
			View		Create	
					Modify	
					Delete	
					Delete all	
					By name	
				✔	Confirm	
			Navigate to			
			Search for contact			
			Call			


Level 1
Level 2
Level 3
Bluetooth (devices)
Telephone connection
Devices detected
Telephone Options

Level 1		Level 2		Level 3		Comments
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Bluetooth connection		**Search**			Start the search for another peripheral device to connect.
			**Connect / Disconnect**			Start or stop the Bluetooth® connection to the selected peripheral device.
			**Update**			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to store them in the audio system.
			**Delete**			Delete the selected telephone.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Search for devices			☑	Telephone	Start the search for peripheral devices.
			**Devices detected**	☑	Audio streaming	
				☑	Internet	
	Telephone connection → Secondary page → Telephone Options		**Put on hold**			Cut the microphone temporarily so that the contact cannot hear your conversation with a passenger.
			**Update**			Import the contacts from the selected telephone to save then in the audio system.
			**Ringtones**			Choose the telephone ringtone and volume.
			**Memory info.**			Contact records used and free, percentage of storage space used by internal contacts and Bluetooth® contacts.
		✔	**Confirm**			Save the settings.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

For reasons of safety and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing the Bluetooth® mobile telephone to the hands-free system of the audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary**.

Procedure (short) from the telephone

In the Bluetooth® menu of your device, select the system name in the list of devices detected.

Enter a code of at least 4 figures in the device and confirm.

Enter this same code in the system, select "**OK**" and confirm.

Procedure from the system

Activate the telephone's Bluetooth® function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press on the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search for devices**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the telephone is not detected, it is recommended that you switch the Bluetooth® function on your telephone off and then on again.



Select the name of the desired peripheral from the list and "**Confirm**".

Enter a code of at least 4 figures for the connection then "**Confirm**".

Enter this same code in the telephone then accept the connection.

The system offers to connect the telephone:
- in "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- in "**Audio streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of audio files from the telephone),
- in "**Internet**" (internet browsing, only if your telephone is compatible with the "DUN" Dial-Up Networking Bluetooth® standard).

Select one or more profiles and confirm.

! The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth® telephone used. Check the telephone manual and with your network provider for details of the services available to you.

! The ability of the system to connect with only one profile depends on the telephone. The three profiles may all connect by default.

Visit www.citroen.co.uk for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).



The recognised telephone appears in the list.

Depending on your telephone, you may be asked to accept automatic connection every time the ignition is switched on.

! Depending on the type of telephone, the system will ask you to accept or not the transfer of your contacts.



If not, select "**Update**".

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is reconnected automatically and within around 30 seconds after switching on the ignition the pairing is done without any action on your part, with (Bluetooth® activated).
To modify the automatic connection mode, select the telephone in the list then select the desired profile.

Connecting a Bluetooth® peripheral device

Automatic reconnection

On switching on the ignition, the telephone connected when the ignition was last switched off is automatically reconnected, if this connection mode had been activated during the pairing procedure.

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Manual connection



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripherals.

Select the peripheral to connect.



Press on "**Search for devices**".

The connection is confirmed by the display of a message and the name of the telephone.

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press on the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth**" to display the list of paired peripheral devices.

Select the peripheral in the list.



Select "**Search for devices**"

Or



"**Connect / Disconnect**" to start or end the Bluetooth connection with the selected device.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the pairing.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.
Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Managing contacts / entries



Select "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Call log**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

> It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; park the vehicle first as a safety measure.



Press on **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Select "**Contacts**".



Select "**View**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact, observing the "international format".

Or



"**Modify**" to edit the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete**" to delete the selected contact.

Or



"**Delete all**" to delete all information for the selected contact.



Select "**By name**" to view the list of contacts.

Frequently asked questions

The following table groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The route settings may conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll motorway).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The Risk areas audible warning does not work.	The audible warning is not active.	Activate audible warnings in the "Navigation" menu.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the "Information" function in the list of route settings.
I receive a Risk areas alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all Risk areas positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for Risk areas located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to view the exact position of the Risk areas. Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	The filters are too restrictive.	Modify the settings.
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This phenomenon is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

Radio

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The quality of reception of the radio station listened to gradually deteriorates or the stored stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter used by the station listened to or there is no transmitter in the geographical area through which the vehicle is travelling.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a fault with the audio system.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a CITROËN dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.	The station is not received or its name has changed in the list.	Press and hold the "List" button at the steering mounted controls to update the list of stations received or press on the system update function: "Update list".
The name of the radio station changes.	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets this information as the name of the station.	

Media

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
When I connect my iPhone as a telephone and to the USB port at the same time, I am unable to play the music files.	When the iPhone connects automatically as a telephone, it forces the streaming function. The streaming function takes the place of the USB function which is then not useable, there is a period without sound of the track being played with Apple® players.	Disconnect and reconnect to the USB port (the USB function takes priority over streaming).
The CD is ejected automatically or is not played by the player.	The CD is inserted upside down, is unplayable, does not contain any audio data or contains an audio format which the player cannot play. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf...). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating protection system which is not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: refer to the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system's CD player does not play DVDs. Some recorded CDs will not be played by the audio system because they are not of adequate quality.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	When a new medium is inserted, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This phenomenon is normal.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
The CD player sound is poor.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio equipment settings (bass, treble, ambiences) are unsuitable.	Set the treble or bass level to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some characters in the media information are not displayed correctly while playing.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playing of streaming files does not start.	The peripheral device connected does not support automatic play.	Start the playback from the device.
The names of tracks and the track length are not displayed on the screen when streaming audio.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

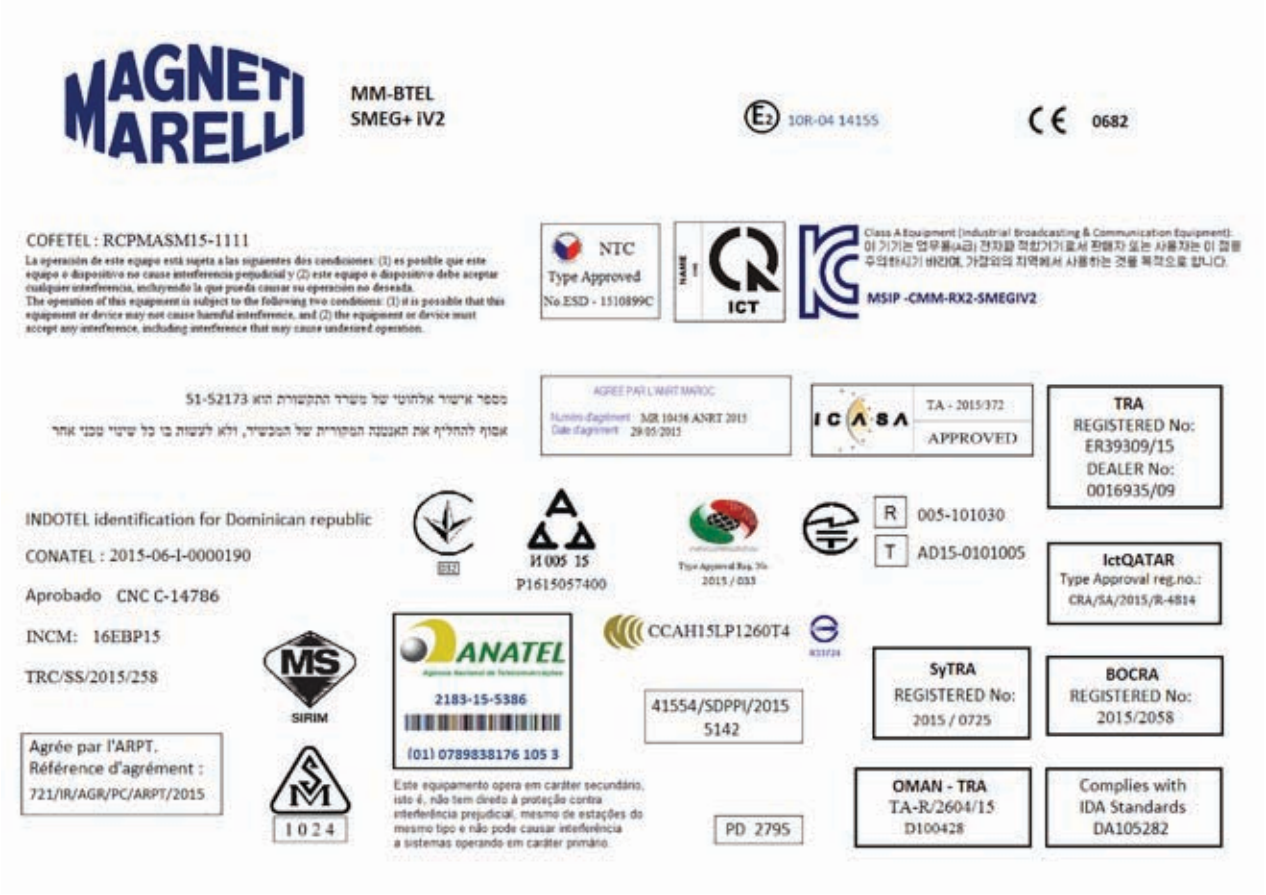
Settings

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
In changing the equalizer setting, treble and bass return to zero.		
When changing the balance settings, the distribution setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings. Modifying one without the other is not possible.	Modify the balance or distribution settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing an distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.		
When the "All passengers" mode is selected, the distribution is not as I would like.	The choice of an "All passengers" distribution setting can be programmed.	Modify the distribution setting using the slider on the touch screen.

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	For optimum sound quality, the audio settings for Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume can be adapted to the different sound sources, which may result in audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings (Loudness, Ambience, Treble, Bass, Volume) are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust Balance, Treble and Bass to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
With the engine off, the system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging of the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.

Telephone

QUESTION	ANSWER	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone's Bluetooth function is switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at www.citroen.co.uk (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The volume depends both on the system and on the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	The ambient noise level has an influence on the quality of telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
Contacts are not shown in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the display setting in the telephone directory.
The system does not receive SMS text messages.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	


MAGNETI MARELLI
MM-BTEL
SMEG+ iV2
E2 10R-04 14155
CE 0682
COFETEL : RCPMASM15-1111
La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones: (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.
The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) the equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
NTC
Type Approved
No.ESD - 1510899C
ICT
Class A Equipment (Industrial Broadcasting & Communication Equipment)
이 기기는 업무용(A급) 전자파 적합기기로서 판매자 또는 사용자는 이 점을 주의하시기 바라며, 가정외의 지역에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 합니다.
MSIP -CMM-RX2-SMEGIV2
מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשורת הוא 51-52173
אסוף להחליף את האנטנה המסורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 10436 ANRT 2015
Date d'agrément : 29/05/2015
IC A SA
TA - 2015/372
APPROVED
TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER39309/15
DEALER No:
0016935/09
INDOTEL identification for Dominican republic
CONATEL : 2015-06-I-0000190
Aprobado CNC C-14786
INCM: 16EBP15
TRC/SS/2015/258
И 005 15
P1615057400
Type Approval Reg. No.
2015 / 033
R 005-101030
T AD15-0101005
IctQATAR
Type Approval reg.no.:
CRA/SA/2015/R-4814
MS
SIRIM
ANATEL
2183-15-5386
(01) 0789838176 105 3
CCAH15LP1260T4
41554/SDPPI/2015
5142
SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
2015 / 0725
BOCRA
REGISTERED No:
2015/2058
Agrée par l'ARPT.
Référence d'agrément :
721/IR/AGR/PC/ARPT/2015
1024
Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.
PD 2795
OMAN - TRA
TA-R/2604/15
D100428
Complies with
IDA Standards
DA105282

CITROËN Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio - Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	14
Applications	17
Radio	22
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	24
Media	25
Telephone	27
Settings	32
Frequently asked questions	36

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Adjustment of the volume.

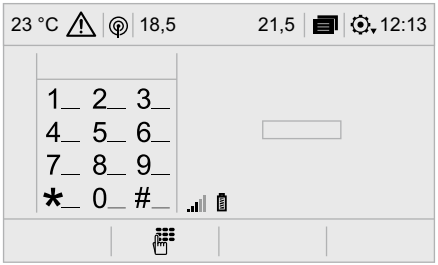
Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

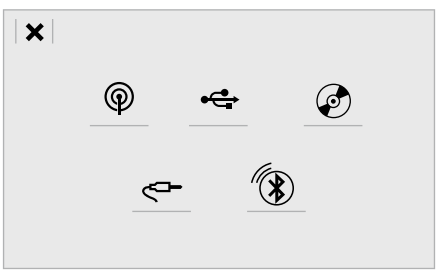
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):
- FM / DAB radio stations* / AM*.
- USB key.
- CD player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and multimedia broadcast Bluetooth* (streaming).



* Depending on equipment.

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system which may go into stand-by (display and sound completely off) for at least 5 minutes. The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

Decrease volume.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous / next station.
Media (rotate): previous / next track, move through a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

Connected navigation

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



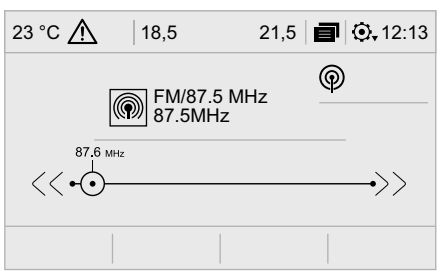
Applications

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



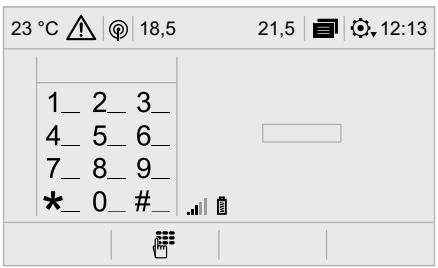
Radio Media

Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



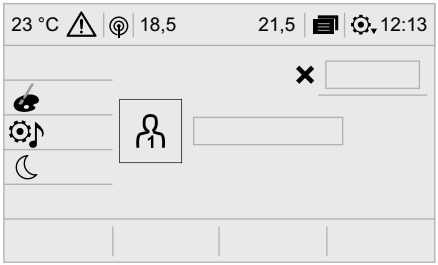
Telephone

Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



Configuration

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).



Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls

Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and opening roof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (according to version),
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers to not speak.

First steps

Example of a "voice command" for navigation :
"Navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London".
Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media :
"Play artist "Madonna"".
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone :
"Call David Miller".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

Information - Using the system



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask me to do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	**Help messages**
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 **Help messages**
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing"
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces : "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a message, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces : "Please first connect a telephone" and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Send a quick message to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a message, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages. Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".
Listen to most recent message*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a profile

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And / Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Zoom out / zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

i In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take in the list of "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

i Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

i Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

i A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards coordinates GPS



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

According to version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

Wi-Fi connection

Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Connect-App" section).

Restrictions of use :
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

On the display of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack :
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger area pack (option).

The principles and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorize sending information**"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".

Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

Select this button.

Activate: **Give an audible warning**

! To access connected navigation you must select the option "**Authorize sending information**".

i The display of danger areas depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger areas"

! To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you must select the option "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen

Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "Danger area".

Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger areas" pack updates

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select the "**System info**" tab.

Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select "**Update(s) due**".

i You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Display the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**MirrorLink™**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that "Bluetooth®" be started on the smartphone

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Smartphone connection Android Auto

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menu by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers, is deactivated.

There may be a waiting time for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth® connection

As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**".



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles :

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone Wi-Fi.



Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And / Or

Select the "**Settings**" to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Manage connections

Press **Connect-App** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.
This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate / Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate / Deactivate "**Station follow**".

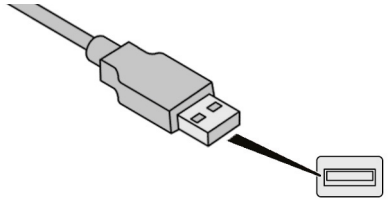
OK Press "**OK**".

If "DAB-FM auto tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB/FM auto tracking " is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



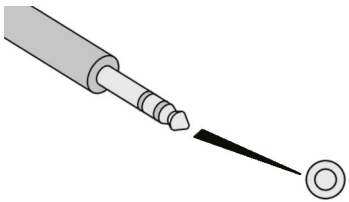
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model / depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma,.aac, .flac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (.mp4, etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

i If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

i Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

i On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

! The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

i The profiles compatible with the system are : HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **TEL** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button to reject the call.

or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **TEL** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

i It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts / entries

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**" or "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.

Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Press " **Play**" to hear the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Configuration

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The audio settings **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or Deactivate "**Loudness**".
The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or Deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.

Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.
Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.

00.0 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

! Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press on this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

! As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

i Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger areas" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the “Navigation” menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select setting for the "Traffic info " function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger area" alert which is not on my route.	Other than guidance, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger area". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways...) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.
The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel...) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed ...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not picked or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to insufficient quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.
There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new key, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used in scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	To start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronizing contacts are synchronizing the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronizations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu / Options / Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.

Europe

1999/5/EC Directive regulatory notices

This device has been evaluated against the essential requirements of the 1999/5/EC Directive.

Bulgarian	С настоящето ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." декларира, че ""NAC EUR WAVE2"отговаря на съществените изисквания и другите приложими изисквания на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Croatian	Ovime "Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", izjavljuje da je ovaj "NAC EUR WAVE2" je u skladu s osnovnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Czech	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." tímto prohlašuje, že tento ""NAC EUR WAVE2"je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Danish	Undertegnede ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr ""NAC EUR WAVE2"overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Dutch	Hierbij verklaart ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." dat het toestel ""NAC EUR WAVE2"in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
English	Hereby, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", declares that this ""NAC EUR WAVE2"is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Estonian	Käesolevaga kinnitab ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." seadme ""NAC EUR WAVE2"vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
German	Hiermit erklärt ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", dass sich das Gerät ""NAC EUR WAVE2"in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Greek	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ ""NAC EUR WAVE2"ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Hungarian	Alulírott, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." nyilatkozom, hogy a ""NAC EUR WAVE2"megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Finnish	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." vakuuttaa täten että ""NAC EUR WAVE2"tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
French	Par la présente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." déclare que l'appareil ""NAC EUR WAVE2"est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Icelandic	Hér með lýsir ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." yfir því að ""NAC EUR WAVE2"er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC
Italian	Con la presente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." dichiara che questo ""NAC EUR WAVE2"è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latvian	Ar šo ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." deklarē, ka ""NAC EUR WAVE2"atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lithuanian	Šiuo ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." deklaruoja, kad šis ""NAC EUR WAVE2"atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Maltese	Hawnhekk, ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o.", jiddikjara li dan ""NAC EUR WAVE2"jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Norwegian	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." erklærer herved at utstyret ""NAC EUR WAVE2"er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Polish	Niniejszym ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." oświadcza, że ""NAC EUR WAVE2"jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC
Portuguese	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." declara que este ""NAC EUR WAVE2"está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovak	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." týmto vyhlasuje, že ""NAC EUR WAVE2"spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Slovenian	""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." izjavlja, da je ta ""NAC EUR WAVE2"v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Spanish	Por medio de la presente ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." declara que ""NAC EUR WAVE2"cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Swedish	Härmed intygar ""Continental Automotive Czech Republic, s.r.o." att denna ""NAC EUR WAVE2"står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

In order to satisfy the essential requirements of 1999/5/EC Directive, the product is compliant with the following standards:

RF spectrum use (R&TTE art. 3.2)	ETSI EN 300 328 V1.9.1 (2015-02)
EMC (R&TTE art. 3.1b)	ETSI EN 301 489-1 V1.9.2 (2011-09) ETSI EN 301 489-17 V2.2.1 (2012-09) ETSI EN 300 440-2 V1.4.1 (2010-08) EN 55013 (2013) EN 55020 (2007)
Health & Safety (R&TTE art. 3.1a)	EN 60950-1:2006 + A11:2009+ A12:2011 + A1:2010 + AC:2011+ A2:2013
RoHS	2011/65/UE, 2014/1UE to 2014/6/UE, 2014/8/UE to 2014/16/UE

The conformity assessment procedure referred to in Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of Directive 1999/5/EC has been followed with the involvement of the following Notified Body:

AT4 wireless, S.A.
Parque Tecnologico de Andalucía
C/ Severo Ochoa 2
29590 Campanillas – Málaga
SPAIN
Notified Body No: 1909

Thus, the following marking is included in the product (**Label on top**):

CE 1909

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union.

➢ Specific instructions of installation and proper use of the equipment

This Multimedia System Equipment must be fixed in a car dashboard.

This Equipment is intended to be installed by service persons or qualified operators in a restricted access location that can only accessed by using a tool.
The external devices and accessories connected to the equipment shall comply its product standard in order to prevent fire risks.
Fuse characteristics:

MINI AUTO FUSE W Yellow 20:
Voltage rated: 32V (Volts)
Current rated: 20A (Amperes)

600	0.30 seconds	0.100 seconds
350	0.080 seconds	0.250 seconds
200	0.15 seconds	5 seconds
135	0.75 seconds	600 seconds
110	100 hours	-
% of rating	Minimum	Maximum
	Blow Time	

➢ List of countries within the EU or geographical zones where it can be used.

There is no restriction for the commercialization of this device in all the countries of the European Union:

Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, Netherlands, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, United Kingdom,

➢ Information about the license that apply to it.

There is no specific license.

➢ Restrictions or possible additional restrictions when trying to achieve the authorisation of use of the equipment.

There is no specific restriction to achieve the authorisation of use of the equipment.

USA – Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

FCC ID: ZFW-NACEUR2

1. Modification Statement

"Continental Automotive Rambouillet France S.A.S." has not approved any changes or modifications to this device by the user. Any changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

2. Interference statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1)This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

3. Wireless notice:

This device complies with FCCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

4. FCC Class A/B digital device or peripheral notice – Class

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

—Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
—Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
—Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
—Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

CITROËN Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB radio (Digital Audio Broadcasting)	9
Media	10
Telephone	12
Settings	18
Frequently asked questions	21

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Adjustment of the volume.

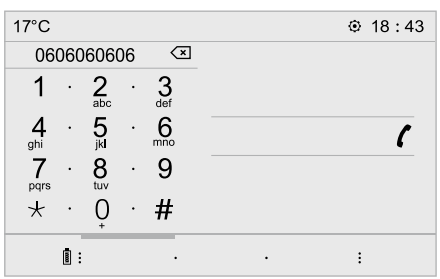
Use the buttons below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menu at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

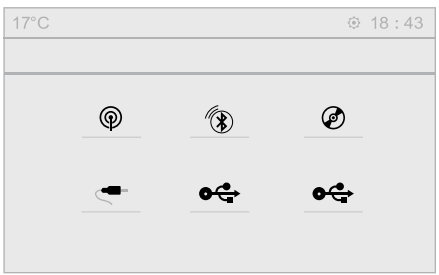
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):
- FM / DAB radio stations* / AM*.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and multimedia broadcast Bluetooth* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB key.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, ...); these settings are taken into account automatically.

* Depending on equipment.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system which may go into stand-by (display and sound completely off) for at least 5 minutes.
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls



Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



Radio (rotate): previous / next preset.
Media (rotate) : previous / next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

LIST

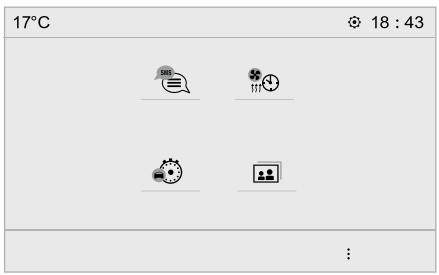
Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model / Depending on version

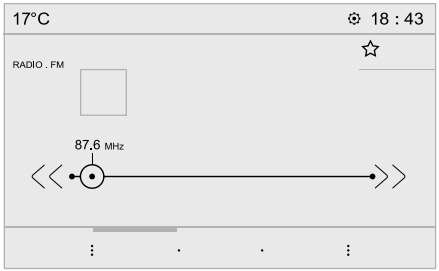
Applications

Access configurable equipment.



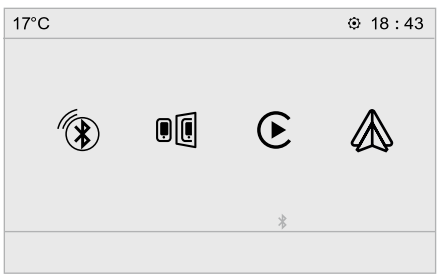
Radio Media

Select an audio source or radio station.



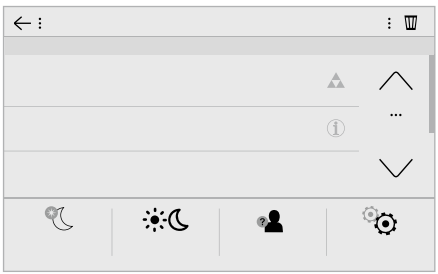
Telephone

Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, ...) and the display (language, units, date, time, ...).



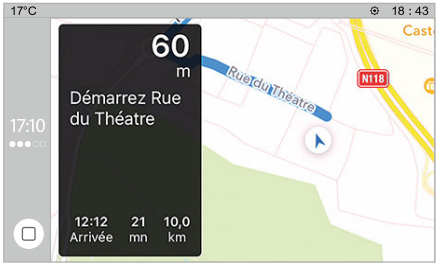
Driving

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation

Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff ; .gif ; .jpg/jpeg ; .bmp ; .png.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search for a contact.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This phenomenon is normal in the propagation of radio waves and is in no way indicative of a fault with the audio system.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

FM

Press "**Band**" to change waveband.

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating / Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of a station that can occur during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate / Deactivate "**INFO**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Listening to TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a traffic report is transmitted, the current audio source is interrupted automatically to play the TA message. Normal playback resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate / Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press “**Audio settings**".

Select the “**Tone**" or “**Balance**" or “**Sound**" or “**Ringtones**" tab to configure the audio settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

i In the tab "**Tone**", the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
On the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
On the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

! The sound distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

i Onboard audio: the Sound Staging of Arkamys© optimises the distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

! Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different multiplexes offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Waveband**" to select the "**DAB band**".

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Follow-up

i "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate / Deactivate "**FM-DAB Follow-up**".

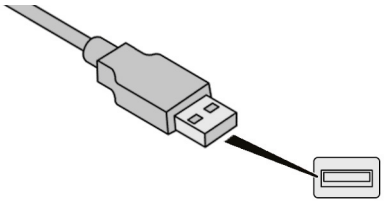
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

i If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if the "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



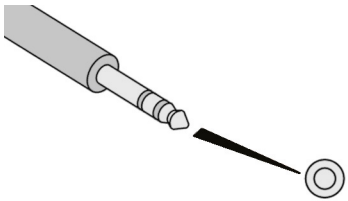
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model / depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player…) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First, adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® Streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated, first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists / albums / genres / playlists / audiobooks / podcasts), you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other peripherals, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav, .wma, .aac, .ogg and .mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (.mp4, etc.) can be read.
".wma" files must be of the standard wma 9 type.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g.: " " ? . ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB keys in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device is used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®

Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the principles and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface..

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USBcable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Smartphone connection Android Auto

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The principles and standards are constantly changing, for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone is unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USBcable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the system's menus is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with theBluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure using the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephone(s) detected is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile :

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles :
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

! The available services depend on the network, SIM card, and device Bluetooth compatibility. Consult your telephone's manual and your operator to find out which services are available to you.

i The profiles compatible with the system are : HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, ...).

Managing paired telephones

i This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Configuration

Profile settings

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0 Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust luminosity

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (according to version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (according to version).

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h / 24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 Mhz is displayed ...).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks...) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a franchised dealer.
I can not find some radio stations in the list of picked stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not picked or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	To start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone at the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, ...).
The contacts are listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
In changing the setting of treble and bass the equalizer setting is deselected. When changing the equalizer setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an equalizer setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice-versa.	Modify the treble and bass or equalizer settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice-versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system stops after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. In normal off state, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Turn the ignition on to increase the charge of the battery.

Česky [Czech]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH tímto prohlašuje, že tento "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Dansk [Danish]	Undertegnede Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbHerklærer herved, at følgende udstyr "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Deutsch [German]	Hiermit erklärt Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, dass sich das Gerät "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
Eesti [Estonian]	Käesolevaga kinnitab Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH seadme "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
English	Hereby, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, declares that this "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Español [Spanish]	Por medio de la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que el "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Ελληνική [Greek]	ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ "PSA RCC" ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ "PSA RCC" ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Français [French]	Par la présente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH déclare que l'appareil "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Italiano [Italian]	Con la presente Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dichiara che questo "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Latviski [Latvian]	Ar šo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklarē, ka "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Lietuvių [Lithuanian]	Šiuo Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH deklaruoja, kad šis "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Nederlands [Dutch]	Hierbij verklaart Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH dat het toestel "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Malti [Maltese]	Hawnhekk, Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH, jiddikjara li dan "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Magyar [Hungarian]	Alulírott,Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH nyilatkozom, hogy a "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
Polski [Polish]	Niniejszym Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH oświadcza, że "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Português [Portuguese]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH declara que este "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Slovensko [Slovenian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH izjavlja, da je ta "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Slovensky [Slovak]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH týmto vyhlasuje, že "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Suomi [Finnish]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH vakuuttaa täten että "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Svenska [Swedish]	Härmed intygar Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH att denna "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Íslenska [Icelandic]	Hér með lýsir Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH yfir því að "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Norsk [Norwegian]	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH erklærer herved at utstyret "PSA RCC", "PSA RCC" er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">ECE type-approval certificate No. is 057902
(concerning the type-approval of an electric/electronic sub-assembly under Regulation No. 10)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">emitted frequency range and power:

Frequency band Radiated Power [EIRP] Hints / Restriction

2402 MHz – 2480 MHz WiFi < 51mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A2
2412 MHz – 2472 MHz Bluetooth < 2,6 mW Antenna internal for PSA RCC A1 & A2
Antenna configuration: internal antenna
Internal antenna not accessible by user. Any change of the user will violate the legal approval of this product.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Brazil</td><td>

“Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.”</td></tr>
<tr><td>Canada</td><td>This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules and Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received,
including interference that may cause undesired operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Japan</td><td>R= Radio Type Approval Number: BBBBBBBBBB

T= Terminal Equipment Approval number: X JJ-5NNN AAA</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mexico</td><td>NOM-121-SCT1-2009
La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:
(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y
(2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.</td></tr>
<tr><td>South Korea</td><td>해당 무선 설비는 운용 중 전파혼신 가능성이 있음.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Taiwan</td><td>本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法第十二條、第十四條等條文規定
1.
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

2.
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。</td></tr>
<tr><td>USA / Canada</td><td>This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications made to this equipment not expressly approved by (Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH) may void the FCC and IC Canada authorization to operate this equipment.</td></tr>
</table>